

# The Heidelberg Catechism

with Bible verses in **ESV**

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

1. What is your only comfort in life and death?

2. What do you need to know in order to live and die in the joy of this comfort?

3. From where do you know your sins and misery?

4. What does God's law require of us?

5. Can you keep all this perfectly?

6. Did God, then, create man so wicked and perverse?

7. From where, then, did man's depraved nature come?

8. But are we so corrupt that we are totally unable to do any good and inclined to all evil?

9. Is God, then, not unjust by requiring in His law what man cannot do?

10. Will God allow such disobedience and apostasy to go unpunished?

11. But is God not also merciful?

12. Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?

13. Can we ourselves make this payment?

14. Can any mere creature pay for us?

15. What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

16. Why must He be a true and righteous man?

17. Why must He at the same time be true God?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

18. But who is that Mediator who at the same time is true God and a true and righteous man?

19. From where do you know this?

20. Are all men, then, saved by Christ just as they perished through Adam?

21. What is true faith?

22. What, then, must a Christian believe?

23. What are these articles?

24. How are these articles divided?

25. Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

26. What do you believe when you say:  
I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

27. What do you understand by the providence of God?

28. What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

29. Why is the Son of God called Jesus, that is, Saviour?

30. Do those believe in the only Saviour Jesus who seek their salvation and well-being from saints, in themselves, or anywhere else?

31. Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

32. Why are you called a Christian?

33. Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

34. Why do you call Him our Lord?

35. What do you confess when you say:  
He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?

36. What benefit do you receive from the holy conception and birth of Christ?

37. What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

38. Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

39. Does it have a special meaning that Christ was crucified and did not die in a different way?

40. Why was it necessary for Christ to humble Himself even unto death?

41. Why was he buried?

42. Since Christ has died for us, why do we still have to die?

43. What further benefit do we receive from Christ's sacrifice and death on the cross?

44. Why is there added: He descended into hell?

45. How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

46. What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?

47. Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?

48. But are the two natures in Christ not separated from each other if His human nature is not present wherever His divinity is?

49. How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

50. Why is it added, And sits at the right hand of God?

51. How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

52. What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?

53. What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

54. What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

55. What do you understand by the communion of saints?

56. What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

57. What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

58. What comfort do you receive from the article about the life everlasting?

59. But what does it help you now that you believe all this?

60. How are you righteous before God?

61. Why do you say that you are righteous only by faith?

62. But why can our good works not be our righteousness before God, or at least a part of it?

63. But do our good works earn nothing, even though God promises to reward them in this life and the next?

64. Does this teaching not make people careless and wicked?

65. Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

66. What are the sacraments?

67. Are both the Word and the sacraments then intended to focus our faith on the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross as the only ground of our salvation?

68. How many sacraments has Christ instituted in the new covenant?

69. How does holy baptism signify and seal to you that the one sacrifice of Christ on the cross benefits you?

70. What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

71. Where has Christ promised that He will wash us with His blood and Spirit as surely as we are washed with the water of baptism?

72. Does this outward washing with water itself wash away sins?

73. Why then does the Holy Spirit call baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins?

74. Should infants, too, be baptized?

75. How does the Lord's Supper signify and seal to you that you share in Christ's one sacrifice on the cross and in all His gifts?

76. What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

77. Where has Christ promised that He will nourish and refresh believers with His body and blood as surely as they eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup?

78. Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

79. Why then does Christ call the bread His body and the cup His blood, or the new covenant in His blood, and why does Paul speak of a participation in the body and blood of Christ?

80. What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

81. Who are to come to the table of the Lord?

82. Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?

83. What are the keys of the kingdom of heaven?

84. How is the kingdom of heaven opened and closed by the preaching of the gospel?

85. How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

86. Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?

87. Can those be saved who do not turn to God from their ungrateful and impenitent walk of life?

88. What is the true repentance or conversion of man?

89. What is the dying of the old nature?

90. What is the coming to life of the new nature?

91. But what are good works?

92. What is the law of the LORD?

93. How are these commandments divided?

94. What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

95. What is idolatry?

96. What does God require in the second commandment?

97. May we then not make any image at all?

98. But may images not be tolerated in the churches as "books for the laity"?

99. What is required in the third commandment?

100. Is the blaspheming of God's Name by swearing and cursing such a grievous sin that God is angry also with those who do not prevent and forbid it as much as they can?

101. But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?

102. May we also swear by saints or other creatures?

103. What does God require in the fourth commandment?

104. What does God require in the fifth commandment?

105. What does God require in the sixth commandment?

106. But does this commandment speak only of killing?

107. Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

108. What does the seventh commandment teach us?

109. Does God in this commandment forbid nothing more than adultery and similar shameful sins?

110. What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

111. What does God require of you in this commandment?



## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

112. What is required in the ninth commandment?

113. What does the tenth commandment require of us?

114. But can those converted to God keep these commandments perfectly?

115. If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?

116. Why is prayer necessary for Christians?

117. What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

118. What has God commanded us to ask of Him?

119. What is the Lord's prayer?

120. Why has Christ commanded us to address God as Our Father?

121. Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

122. What is the first petition?

123. What is the second petition?

124. What is the third petition?

125. What is the fourth petition?

126. What is the fifth petition?

127. What is the sixth petition?

128. How do you conclude your prayer?

## **The Heidelberg Catechism**

### **Table of Content**

129. What does the word Amen mean?

## Question 1

# What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

### **1 Corinthians 6:19, 2** [1]

19. Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own, 2. Or do you not know that the saints will judge the world? And if the world is to be judged by you, are you incompetent to try trivial cases?

### **Romans 14:7-9** [2]

7. For none of us lives to himself, and none of us dies to himself. 8. For if we live, we live to the Lord, and if we die, we die to the Lord. So then, whether we live or whether we die, we are the Lord's. 9. For to this end Christ died and lived again, that he might be Lord both of the dead and of the living.

### **1 Corinthians 3:23** [3] 23. and you are Christ's, and Christ is God's.

### **Titus 2:14** [3]

14. who gave himself for us to redeem us from all lawlessness and to purify for himself a people for his own possession who are zealous for good works.

### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [4]

18. knowing that you were ransomed from the futile ways inherited from your forefathers, not with perishable things such as silver or gold, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or spot.

### **1 John 1:7** [4]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin.

### **1 John 2:2** [4]

2. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.

### **John 8:34-36** [5]

34. Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, everyone who practices sin is a slave to sin. 35. The slave does not remain in the house forever; the son remains forever. 36. So if the Son sets you free, you will be free indeed.

## Question 1

### What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

#### **Hebrews 2:14-15** [5]

14. Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, 15. and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery.

#### **1 John 3:8** [5]

8. Whoever makes a practice of sinning is of the devil, for the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the works of the devil.

#### **John 6:39, 40** [6]

39. And this is the will of him who sent me, that I should lose nothing of all that he has given me, but raise it up on the last day.  
40. For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and believes in him should have eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day."

#### **John 10:27-30** [6]

27. My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me.  
28. I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. 29. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand. 30. I and the Father are one."

#### **2 Thessalonians 3:3** [6]

3. But the Lord is faithful. He will establish you and guard you against the evil one.

#### **1 Peter 1:5** [6]

5. who by God's power are being guarded through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

#### **Matthew 10:29-31** [7]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? And not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father. 30. But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. 31. Fear not, therefore; you are of more value than many sparrows.

## Question 1

### What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

#### **Luke 21:16-18** [7]

16. You will be delivered up even by parents and brothers and relatives and friends, and some of you they will put to death. 17. You will be hated by all for my name's sake. 18. But not a hair of your head will perish.

#### **Romans 8:28** [8]

28. And we know that for those who love God all things work together for good, for those who are called according to his purpose.

#### **Romans 8:15, 16** [9]

15. For you did not receive the spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you have received the Spirit of adoption as sons, by whom we cry, "Abba! Father!" 16. The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God,

#### **2 Corinthians 1:21, 22** [9]

21. And it is God who establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us, 22. and who has also put his seal on us and given us his Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:5** [9]

5. He who has prepared us for this very thing is God, who has given us the Spirit as a guarantee.

#### **Ephesians 1:13-14** [9]

13. In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, 14. who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.

#### **Romans 8:14** [10]

14. For all who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God.

## Question 2

### What do you need to know in order to live and die in the joy of this comfort?

First, how great my sins and misery are; [1] second, how I am delivered from all my sins and misery; [2] third, how I am to be thankful to God for such deliverance. [3]

#### **Romans 3:9-10** [1]

9. What then? Are we Jews any better off? No, not at all. For we have already charged that all, both Jews and Greeks, are under sin, 10. as it is written: "None is righteous, no, not one;

#### **1 John 1:10** [1]

10. If we say we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

#### **John 17:3** [2]

3. And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

#### **Acts 4:12** [2]

12. And there is salvation in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

#### **Acts 10:43** [2]

43. To him all the prophets bear witness that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

#### **Matthew 5:16** [3]

16. In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father who is in heaven.

#### **Romans 6:13** [3]

13. Do not present your members to sin as instruments for unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life, and your members to God as instruments for righteousness.

#### **Ephesians 5:8-10** [3]

8. for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light 9. (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), 10. and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.

## Question 2

### **What do you need to know in order to live and die in the joy of this comfort?**

First, how great my sins and misery are; [1] second, how I am delivered from all my sins and misery; [2] third, how I am to be thankful to God for such deliverance. [3]

#### **1 Peter 2:9-10** [3]

**9.** But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light. **10.** Once you were not a people, but now you are God's people; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.

### Question 3

## From where do you know your sins and misery?

From the law of God. [1]

### **Romans 3: 20** [1]

20. For by works of the law no human being will be justified in his sight, since through the law comes knowledge of sin.



#### Question 4

### What does God's law require of us?

Christ teaches us this in a summary in Matthew 22: You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind. [1]

This is the great and first commandment. And a second is like it, You shall love your neighbour as yourself. On these two commandments depend all the law and the prophets. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 6:5** [1]

5. You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might.

#### **Leviticus 19:18** [2]

18. You shall not take vengeance or bear a grudge against the sons of your own people, but you shall love your neighbor as yourself: I am the LORD.

## Question 5

### Can you keep all this perfectly?

No, [1] I am inclined by nature to hate God and my neighbour. [2]

#### **Romans 3:10, 23** [1]

10. as it is written: "None is righteous, no, not one; 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,

#### **1 John 1:8, 10** [1]

8. If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. 10. If we say we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

#### **Genesis 6:5** [2]

5. The LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intention of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.

#### **Genesis 8:21** [2]

21. And when the LORD smelled the pleasing aroma, the LORD said in his heart, "I will never again curse the ground because of man, for the intention of man's heart is evil from his youth. Neither will I ever again strike down every living creature as I have done.

#### **Jeremiah 17:9** [2]

9. The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately sick; who can understand it?

#### **Romans 7:23** [2]

23. but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members.

#### **Romans 8:7** [2]

7. For the mind that is set on the flesh is hostile to God, for it does not submit to God's law; indeed, it cannot.

#### **Ephesians 2:3** [2]

3. among whom we all once lived in the passions of our flesh, carrying out the desires of the body and the mind, and were by nature children of wrath, like the rest of mankind.

#### **Titus 3:3** [2]

3. For we ourselves were once foolish, disobedient, led astray, slaves to various passions and pleasures, passing our days in malice and envy, hated by others and hating one another.

## Question 6

### Did God, then, create man so wicked and perverse?

No, on the contrary, God created man good [1] and in His image, [2] that is, in true righteousness and holiness, [3] so that he might rightly know God His Creator, [4] heartily love Him, and live with Him in eternal blessedness to praise and glorify Him. [5]

#### **Genesis 1:31** [1]

31. And God saw everything that he had made, and behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day.

#### **Genesis 1:26-27** [2]

26. Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."  
27. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.

#### **Ephesians 4:24** [3]

24. and to put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness.

#### **Colossians 3:10** [4]

10. and have put on the new self, which is being renewed in knowledge after the image of its creator.

#### **Psalms 8** [5]

1. O LORD, our Lord, how majestic is your name in all the earth! You have set your glory above the heavens. 2. Out of the mouth of babies and infants, you have established strength because of your foes, to still the enemy and the avenger. 3. When I look at your heavens, the work of your fingers, the moon and the stars, which you have set in place, 4. what is man that you are mindful of him, and the son of man that you care for him? 5. Yet you have made him a little lower than the heavenly beings and crowned him with glory and honor. 6. You have given him dominion over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet, 7. all sheep and oxen, and also the beasts of the field, 8. the birds of the heavens, and the fish of the sea, whatever passes along the paths of the seas. 9. O LORD, our Lord, how majestic is your name in all the earth!

## Question 7

### **From where, then, did man's depraved nature come?**

From the fall and disobedience of our first parents, Adam and Eve, in Paradise, [1] for there our nature became so corrupt [2] that we are all conceived and born in sin. [3]

#### **Genesis 3 [1]**

#### **Romans 5:12, 18, 19 [2]**

**12.** Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned — **18.** Therefore, as one trespass led to condemnation for all men, so one act of righteousness leads to justification and life for all men. **19.** For as by the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, so by the one man's obedience the many will be made righteous.

#### **Psalms 51:5 [3]**

**5.** Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.

## Question 8

### **But are we so corrupt that we are totally unable to do any good and inclined to all evil?**

Yes, [1] unless we are regenerated by the Spirit of God. [2]

#### **Genesis 6:5** [1]

5. The LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intention of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.

#### **Genesis 8:21** [1]

21. And when the LORD smelled the pleasing aroma, the LORD said in his heart, "I will never again curse the ground because of man, for the intention of man's heart is evil from his youth. Neither will I ever again strike down every living creature as I have done.

#### **Job 14:4** [1]

4. Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean? There is not one.

#### **Isaiah 53:6** [1]

6. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned — every one — to his own way; and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all.

#### **John 3:3-5** [2]

3. Jesus answered him, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God." 4. Nicodemus said to him, "How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born?" 5. Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.

## Question 9

### Is God, then, not unjust by requiring in His law what man cannot do?

No, for God so created man that he was able to do it. [1] But man, at the instigation of the devil, [2] in deliberate disobedience [3] robbed himself and all his descendants of these gifts. [4]

#### **Genesis 1:31** [1]

**31.** And God saw everything that he had made, and behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day.

#### **Genesis 3:13** [2]

**13.** Then the LORD God said to the woman, "What is this that you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

#### **John 8:44** [2]

**44.** You are of your father the devil, and your will is to do your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks out of his own character, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

#### **1 Timothy 2:13, 14** [2]

**13.** For Adam was formed first, then Eve; **14.** and Adam was not deceived, but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor.

#### **Genesis 3:6** [3]

**6.** So when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit and ate, and she also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate.

#### **Romans 5:12, 18, 19** [4]

**12.** Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned — **18.** Therefore, as one trespass led to condemnation for all men, so one act of righteousness leads to justification and life for all men. **19.** For as by the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, so by the one man's obedience the many will be made righteous.

## Question 10

### Will God allow such disobedience and apostasy to go unpunished?

Certainly not. He is terribly displeased with our original sin as well as our actual sins. Therefore He will punish them by a just judgment both now and eternally, [1]

as He has declared: [2] Cursed be every one who does not abide by all things written in the book of the law, and do them (Galatians 3:10). [3]

#### **Exodus 34:7** [1]

7. keeping steadfast love for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, but who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children and the children's children, to the third and the fourth generation."

#### **Psalms 5:4-6** [1]

4. For you are not a God who delights in wickedness; evil may not dwell with you. 5. The boastful shall not stand before your eyes; you hate all evildoers. 6. You destroy those who speak lies; the LORD abhors the bloodthirsty and deceitful man.

#### **Psalms 7:10** [1]

10. My shield is with God, who saves the upright in heart.

#### **Nahum 1:2** [1]

2. The LORD is a jealous and avenging God; the LORD is avenging and wrathful; the LORD takes vengeance on his adversaries and keeps wrath for his enemies.

#### **Romans 1:18** [1]

18. For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who by their unrighteousness suppress the truth.

#### **Romans 5:12** [1]

12. Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned —

#### **Ephesians 5:6** [1]

6. Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God comes upon the sons of disobedience.

#### **Hebrews 9:27** [1]

27. And just as it is appointed for man to die once, and after that comes judgment,

#### **Deuteronomy 27:26** [2]

26. "'Cursed be anyone who does not confirm the words of this law by doing them.' And all the people shall say, 'Amen.'"

## Question 11

### But is God not also merciful?

God is indeed merciful, [1] but He is also just. [2]

His justice requires that sin committed against the most high majesty of God also be punished with the most severe, that is, with everlasting, punishment of body and soul. [3]

#### **Exodus 20:6** [1]

6. but showing steadfast love to thousands of those who love me and keep my commandments.

#### **Exodus 34:6-7** [1]

6. The LORD passed before him and proclaimed, "The LORD, the LORD, a God merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love and faithfulness, 7. keeping steadfast love for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, but who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children and the children's children, to the third and the fourth generation."

#### **Psalms 103:8-9** [1]

8. The LORD is merciful and gracious, slow to anger and abounding in steadfast love. 9. He will not always chide, nor will he keep his anger forever.

#### **Exodus 20:5** [2]

5. You shall not bow down to them or serve them, for I the LORD your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and the fourth generation of those who hate me,

#### **Exodus 34:7** [2]

7. keeping steadfast love for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, but who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children and the children's children, to the third and the fourth generation."

#### **Deuteronomy 7:9-11** [2]

9. Know therefore that the LORD your God is God, the faithful God who keeps covenant and steadfast love with those who love him and keep his commandments, to a thousand generations, 10. and repays to their face those who hate him, by destroying them. He will not be slack with one who hates him. He will repay him to his face. 11. You shall therefore be careful to do the commandment and the statutes and the rules that I command you today.



## Question 11

### But is God not also merciful?

God is indeed merciful, [1] but He is also just. [2]

His justice requires that sin committed against the most high majesty of God also be punished with the most severe, that is, with everlasting, punishment of body and soul. [3]

#### **Psalms 5:4-6** [2]

4. For you are not a God who delights in wickedness; evil may not dwell with you. 5. The boastful shall not stand before your eyes; you hate all evildoers. 6. You destroy those who speak lies; the LORD abhors the bloodthirsty and deceitful man.

#### **Hebrews 10:30-31** [2]

30. For we know him who said, "Vengeance is mine; I will repay." And again, "The Lord will judge his people." 31. It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

#### **Matthew 25:45-46** [3]

45. Then he will answer them, saying, 'Truly, I say to you, as you did not do it to one of the least of these, you did not do it to me.' 46. And these will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

## Question 12

**Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?**

God demands that His justice be satisfied. [1] Therefore full payment must be made either by ourselves or by another. [2]

### **Exodus 20:5** [1]

5. You shall not bow down to them or serve them, for I the LORD your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and the fourth generation of those who hate me,

### **Exodus 23:7** [1]

7. Keep far from a false charge, and do not kill the innocent and righteous, for I will not acquit the wicked.

### **Romans 2:1-11** [1]

1. Therefore you have no excuse, O man, every one of you who judges. For in passing judgment on another you condemn yourself, because you, the judge, practice the very same things. 2. We know that the judgment of God rightly falls on those who practice such things. 3. Do you suppose, O man — you who judge those who practice such things and yet do them yourself — that you will escape the judgment of God? 4. Or do you presume on the riches of his kindness and forbearance and patience, not knowing that God's kindness is meant to lead you to repentance? 5. But because of your hard and impenitent heart you are storing up wrath for yourself on the day of wrath when God's righteous judgment will be revealed. 6. He will render to each one according to his works: 7. to those who by patience in well-doing seek for glory and honor and immortality, he will give eternal life; 8. but for those who are self-seeking and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, there will be wrath and fury. 9. There will be tribulation and distress for every human being who does evil, the Jew first and also the Greek, 10. but glory and honor and peace for everyone who does good, the Jew first and also the Greek. 11. For God shows no partiality.

## Question 12

**Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?**

God demands that His justice be satisfied. [1] Therefore full payment must be made either by ourselves or by another. [2]

### **Isaiah 53:11** [2]

11. Out of the anguish of his soul he shall see and be satisfied; by his knowledge shall the righteous one, my servant, make many to be accounted righteous, and he shall bear their iniquities.

### **Romans 8:3, 4** [2]

3. For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh, 4. in order that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.

### Question 13

## Can we ourselves make this payment?

Certainly not. On the contrary, we daily increase our debt. [1]

#### **Psalms 130:3** [1]

3. If you, O LORD, should mark iniquities, O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Matthew 6:12** [1]

12. and forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.

#### **Romans 2:4-5** [1]

4. Or do you presume on the riches of his kindness and forbearance and patience, not knowing that God's kindness is meant to lead you to repentance? 5. But because of your hard and impenitent heart you are storing up wrath for yourself on the day of wrath when God's righteous judgment will be revealed.

## Question 14

### Can any mere creature pay for us?

No. In the first place, God will not punish another creature for the sin which man has committed. [1]

Furthermore, no mere creature can sustain the burden of God's eternal wrath against sin and deliver others from it. [2]

#### **Ezekiel 18:4, 20** [1]

4. Behold, all souls are mine; the soul of the father as well as the soul of the son is mine: the soul who sins shall die. 20. The soul who sins shall die. The son shall not suffer for the iniquity of the father, nor the father suffer for the iniquity of the son. The righteousness of the righteous shall be upon himself, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon himself.

#### **Hebrews 2:14-18** [1]

14. Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, 15. and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery. 16. For surely it is not angels that he helps, but he helps the offspring of Abraham. 17. Therefore he had to be made like his brothers in every respect, so that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in the service of God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people. 18. For because he himself has suffered when tempted, he is able to help those who are being tempted.

#### **Psalms 130:3** [2]

3. If you, O LORD, should mark iniquities, O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Nahum 1:6** [2]

6. Who can stand before his indignation? Who can endure the heat of his anger? His wrath is poured out like fire, and the rocks are broken into pieces by him.

## Question 15

### What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

One who is a true [1] and righteous [2] man, and yet more powerful than all creatures; that is, one who is at the same time true God. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 15:21** [1]

21. For as by a man came death, by a man has come also the resurrection of the dead.

#### **Hebrews 2:17** [1]

17. Therefore he had to be made like his brothers in every respect, so that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in the service of God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people.

#### **Isaiah 53:9** [2]

9. And they made his grave with the wicked and with a rich man in his death, although he had done no violence, and there was no deceit in his mouth.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Hebrews 7:26** [2]

26. For it was indeed fitting that we should have such a high priest, holy, innocent, unstained, separated from sinners, and exalted above the heavens.

#### **Isaiah 7:14** [3]

14. Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign. Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

#### **Isaiah 9:6** [3]

6. For to us a child is born, to us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder, and his name shall be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.

#### **Jeremiah 23:6** [3]

6. In his days Judah will be saved, and Israel will dwell securely. And this is the name by which he will be called: 'The LORD is our righteousness.'

#### **John 1:1** [3]

1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

### Question 15

## What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

One who is a true [1] and righteous [2] man, and yet more powerful than all creatures; that is, one who is at the same time true God. [3]

### **Romans 8:3-4** [3]

3. For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh, 4. in order that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.

## Question 16

### Why must He be a true and righteous man?

He must be a true man because the justice of God requires that the same human nature which has sinned should pay for sin. [1]  
He must be a righteous man because one who himself is a sinner cannot pay for others. [2]

#### **Romans 5:12, 15** [1]

**12.** Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned – **15.** But the free gift is not like the trespass. For if many died through one man's trespass, much more have the grace of God and the free gift by the grace of that one man Jesus Christ abounded for many.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:21** [1]

**21.** For as by a man came death, by a man has come also the resurrection of the dead.

#### **Hebrews 2:14-16** [1]

**14.** Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, **15.** and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery. **16.** For surely it is not angels that he helps, but he helps the offspring of Abraham.

#### **Hebrews 7:26-27** [2]

**26.** For it was indeed fitting that we should have such a high priest, holy, innocent, unstained, separated from sinners, and exalted above the heavens. **27.** He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices daily, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself.

#### **1 Peter 3:18** [2]

**18.** For Christ also suffered once for sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive in the spirit,



## Question 17

### Why must He at the same time be true God?

He must be true God so that by the power of His divine nature [1] He might bear in His human nature the burden of God's wrath, [2] and might obtain for us and restore to us righteousness and life. [3]

#### **Isaiah 9:5** [1]

5. For every boot of the tramping warrior in battle tumult and every garment rolled in blood will be burned as fuel for the fire.

#### **Deuteronomy 4:24** [2]

24. For the LORD your God is a consuming fire, a jealous God.

#### **Nahum 1:6** [2]

6. Who can stand before his indignation? Who can endure the heat of his anger? His wrath is poured out like fire, and the rocks are broken into pieces by him.

#### **Psalms 130:3** [2]

3. If you, O LORD, should mark iniquities, O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Isaiah 53:5, 11** [3]

5. But he was pierced for our transgressions; he was crushed for our iniquities; upon him was the chastisement that brought us peace, and with his wounds we are healed. 11. Out of the anguish of his soul he shall see and be satisfied; by his knowledge shall the righteous one, my servant, make many to be accounted righteous, and he shall bear their iniquities.

#### **John 3:16** [3]

16. "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [3]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

### Question 18

## **But who is that Mediator who at the same time is true God and a true and righteous man?**

Our Lord Jesus Christ, [1] whom God made our wisdom, our righteousness and sanctification and redemption (1 Corinthians 1:30). [2]

#### **Matthew 1:21-23** [1]

21. She will bear a son, and you shall call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins.” 22. All this took place to fulfill what the Lord had spoken by the prophet: 23. “Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and they shall call his name Immanuel” (which means, God with us).

#### **Luke 2:11** [1]

11. For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord.

#### **1 Timothy 2:5** [1]

5. For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus,

#### **1 Timothy 3:16** [1]

16. Great indeed, we confess, is the mystery of godliness: He was manifested in the flesh, vindicated by the Spirit, seen by angels, proclaimed among the nations, believed on in the world, taken up in glory.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Genesis 3:15** [1]

15. I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring; he shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise his heel."

#### **Isaiah 53** [3]

#### **Genesis 12:3** [2]

3. I will bless those who bless you, and him who dishonors you I will curse, and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed."

#### **Genesis 22:18** [2]

18. and in your offspring shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because you have obeyed my voice."

#### **Genesis 49:10** [2]

10. The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until tribute comes to him; and to him shall be the obedience of the peoples.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Jeremiah 23:5, 6** [3]

5. "Behold, the days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will raise up for David a righteous Branch, and he shall reign as king and deal wisely, and shall execute justice and righteousness in the land. 6. In his days Judah will be saved, and Israel will dwell securely. And this is the name by which he will be called: 'The LORD is our righteousness.'

#### **Micah 7:18-20** [3]

18. Who is a God like you, pardoning iniquity and passing over transgression for the remnant of his inheritance? He does not retain his anger forever, because he delights in steadfast love. 19. He will again have compassion on us; he will tread our iniquities underfoot. You will cast all our sins into the depths of the sea. 20. You will show faithfulness to Jacob and steadfast love to Abraham, as you have sworn to our fathers from the days of old.

#### **Acts 10:43** [3]

43. To him all the prophets bear witness that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

#### **Hebrews 1:1** [3]

1. Long ago, at many times and in many ways, God spoke to our fathers by the prophets,

#### **Leviticus 1:7** [4]

7. and the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire on the altar and arrange wood on the fire.

#### **John 5:46** [4]

46. For if you believed Moses, you would believe me; for he wrote of me.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Hebrews 10:1-10** [4]

1. For since the law has but a shadow of the good things to come instead of the true form of these realities, it can never, by the same sacrifices that are continually offered every year, make perfect those who draw near. 2. Otherwise, would they not have ceased to be offered, since the worshipers, having once been cleansed, would no longer have any consciousness of sins? 3. But in these sacrifices there is a reminder of sins every year. 4. For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins. 5. Consequently, when Christ came into the world, he said, "Sacrifices and offerings you have not desired, but a body have you prepared for me; 6. in burnt offerings and sin offerings you have taken no pleasure. 7. Then I said, 'Behold, I have come to do your will, O God, as it is written of me in the scroll of the book.'" 8. When he said above, "You have neither desired nor taken pleasure in sacrifices and offerings and burnt offerings and sin offerings" (these are offered according to the law), 9. then he added, "Behold, I have come to do your will." He does away with the first in order to establish the second. 10. And by that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

#### **Romans 10:4** [5]

4. For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.

#### **Galatians 4:4-5** [5]

4. But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of woman, born under the law, 5. to redeem those who were under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons.

#### **Colossians 2:17** [5]

17. These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance belongs to Christ.

## Question 20

### Are all men, then, saved by Christ just as they perished through Adam?

No. Only those are saved who by a true faith are grafted into Christ and accept all His benefits. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:14** [1]

14. For the gate is narrow and the way is hard that leads to life, and those who find it are few.

#### **John 1:12** [1]

12. But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God,

#### **John 3:16** [1]

16. "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.

#### **John 3:18** [1]

18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe is condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.

#### **John 3:36** [1]

36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; whoever does not obey the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God remains on him.

#### **Romans 11:16-21** [1]

16. If the dough offered as firstfruits is holy, so is the whole lump, and if the root is holy, so are the branches. 17. But if some of the branches were broken off, and you, although a wild olive shoot, were grafted in among the others and now share in the nourishing root of the olive tree, 18. do not be arrogant toward the branches. If you are, remember it is not you who support the root, but the root that supports you. 19. Then you will say, "Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in." 20. That is true. They were broken off because of their unbelief, but you stand fast through faith. So do not become proud, but fear. 21. For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you.

## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **John 17:3** [1]

3. And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

**John 17:17** [1] 17. Sanctify them in the truth; your word is truth.

#### **Hebrews 11:1-3** [1]

1. Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen. 2. For by it the people of old received their commendation. 3. By faith we understand that the universe was created by the word of God, so that what is seen was not made out of things that are visible.

#### **James 2:19** [1]

19. You believe that God is one; you do well. Even the demons believe — and shudder!

#### **Romans 4:18-21** [2]

18. In hope he believed against hope, that he should become the father of many nations, as he had been told, "So shall your offspring be." 19. He did not weaken in faith when he considered his own body, which was as good as dead (since he was about a hundred years old), or when he considered the barrenness of Sarah's womb. 20. No unbelief made him waver concerning the promise of God, but he grew strong in his faith as he gave glory to God, 21. fully convinced that God was able to do what he had promised.

#### **Romans 5:1** [2]

1. Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.

#### **Romans 10:10** [2]

10. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.

## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **Hebrews 4:16** [2]

16. Let us then with confidence draw near to the throne of grace, that we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

#### **Galatians 2:20** [3]

20. I have been crucified with Christ. It is no longer I who live, but Christ who lives in me. And the life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.

#### **Romans 1:17** [4]

17. For in it the righteousness of God is revealed from faith for faith, as it is written, "The righteous shall live by faith."

#### **Hebrews 10:10** [4]

10. And by that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

#### **Romans 3:20-26** [5]

20. For by works of the law no human being will be justified in his sight, since through the law comes knowledge of sin. 21. But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it – 22. the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction: 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24. and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, 25. whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith. This was to show God's righteousness, because in his divine forbearance he had passed over former sins. 26. It was to show his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

#### **Galatians 2:16** [5]

16. yet we know that a person is not justified by works of the law but through faith in Jesus Christ, so we also have believed in Christ Jesus, in order to be justified by faith in Christ and not by works of the law, because by works of the law no one will be justified.



## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **Ephesians 2:8-10** [5]

8. For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, 9. not a result of works, so that no one may boast. 10. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared beforehand, that we should walk in them.

#### **Acts 16:14** [6]

14. One who heard us was a woman named Lydia, from the city of Thyatira, a seller of purple goods, who was a worshiper of God. The Lord opened her heart to pay attention to what was said by Paul.

#### **Romans 1:16** [6]

16. For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.

#### **Romans 10:17** [6]

17. So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ.

#### **1 Corinthians 1:21** [6]

21. For since, in the wisdom of God, the world did not know God through wisdom, it pleased God through the folly of what we preach to save those who believe.

## Question 22

### What, then, must a Christian believe?

All that is promised us in the Gospel, [1] which the articles of our catholic and undoubted Christian faith teach us in a summary. [2]

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **John 20:30-31** [1]

30. Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of the disciples, which are not written in this book; 31. but these are written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name.

### Question 23

## What are these articles?

III.1.I believe in God the Father almighty, III.1. Creator of heaven and earth. III.2.I believe in Jesus Christ, III.2.His only begotten Son, our Lord; III.3.He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, III.3.born of the virgin Mary; III.4.suffered under Pontius Pilate, III.4.was crucified, dead, and buried; III.4.He descended into hell; III.5.On the third day He arose from the dead; III.6.He ascended into heaven, III.6.and sits at the right hand III.6.of God the Father almighty; III.7.from there He will come to judge III.7.the living and the dead. III.8.I believe in the Holy Spirit; III.9.I believe a holy catholic Christian church, III.9.the communion of saints; III.10.the forgiveness of sins; III.11.the resurrection of the body; III.12.and the life everlasting. [1]

## Question 24

### **How are these articles divided?**

Into three parts: the first is about God the Father and our creation; the second about God the Son and our redemption; the third about God the Holy Spirit and our sanctification. [1]

## Question 25

# Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **Deuteronomy 6:4** [1]

4. "Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one.

### **Isaiah 44:6** [1]

6. Thus says the LORD, the King of Israel and his Redeemer, the LORD of hosts: "I am the first and I am the last; besides me there is no god.

### **Isaiah 45:5** [1]

5. I am the LORD, and there is no other, besides me there is no God; I equip you, though you do not know me,

### **1 Corinthians 8:4** [1]

4. Therefore, as to the eating of food offered to idols, we know that "an idol has no real existence," and that "there is no God but one."

### **1 Corinthians 8:6** [1]

6. yet for us there is one God, the Father, from whom are all things and for whom we exist, and one Lord, Jesus Christ, through whom are all things and through whom we exist.

### **Genesis 1:2-3** [2]

2. The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters. 3. And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.

### **Isaiah 61:1** [2]

1. The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me, because the LORD has anointed me to bring good news to the poor; he has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to those who are bound;

### **Isaiah 63:8-10** [2]

8. For he said, "Surely they are my people, children who will not deal falsely." And he became their Savior. 9. In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them; in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; he lifted them up and carried them all the days of old. 10. But they rebelled and grieved his Holy Spirit; therefore he turned to be their enemy, and himself fought against them.

## Question 25

# Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **Matthew 3:16-17** [2]

16. And when Jesus was baptized, immediately he went up from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to rest on him; 17. and behold, a voice from heaven said, "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased."

### **Matthew 28:18-19** [2]

18. And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

### **Luke 4:18** [2]

18. "The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim liberty to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty those who are oppressed,

### **John 14:26** [2]

26. But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you.

### **John 15:26** [2]

26. "But when the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, he will bear witness about me.

### **2 Corinthians 13:14** [2]

14. The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ and the love of God and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.

### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

6. And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!"

### Question 25

## **Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?**

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **Titus 3:5-6** [2]

5. he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit, 6. whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior,

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Genesis 1** [1]

**Genesis 2** [1]



## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

### **Exodus 20:11** [1]

11. For in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy.

### **Job 38** [1]

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Job 39** [1]

**Psalm 33:6** [1]

6. By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, and by the breath of his mouth all their host.

**Isaiah 44:24** [1]

24. Thus says the LORD, your Redeemer, who formed you from the womb: "I am the LORD, who made all things, who alone stretched out the heavens, who spread out the earth by myself,

**Acts 4:24** [1]

24. And when they heard it, they lifted their voices together to God and said, "Sovereign Lord, who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and everything in them,

## Question 26

### What do you believe when you say:

### I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

#### **Acts 14:15** [1]

15. "Men, why are you doing these things? We also are men, of like nature with you, and we bring you good news, that you should turn from these vain things to a living God, who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all that is in them.

#### **Psalms 104:27-30** [2]

27. These all look to you, to give them their food in due season. 28. When you give it to them, they gather it up; when you open your hand, they are filled with good things. 29. When you hide your face, they are dismayed; when you take away their breath, they die and return to their dust. 30. When you send forth your Spirit, they are created, and you renew the face of the ground.

#### **Matthew 6:30** [2]

30. But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which today is alive and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith?

#### **Matthew 10:29** [2]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? And not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father.

#### **Ephesians 1:11** [2]

11. In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of him who works all things according to the counsel of his will,

## Question 26

### What do you believe when you say:

### I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

#### **John 1:12-13** [3]

12. But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God, 13. who were born, not of blood nor of the will of the flesh nor of the will of man, but of God.

#### **Romans 8:15-16** [3]

15. For you did not receive the spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you have received the Spirit of adoption as sons, by whom we cry, "Abba! Father!" 16. The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God,

#### **Galatians 4:4-7** [3]

4. But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of woman, born under the law, 5. to redeem those who were under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons. 6. And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!" 7. So you are no longer a slave, but a son, and if a son, then an heir through God.

#### **Ephesians 1:5** [3]

5. he predestined us for adoption to himself as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will,

#### **Psalms 55:22** [4]

22. Cast your burden on the LORD, and he will sustain you; he will never permit the righteous to be moved.

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

### **Matthew 6:25-26** [4]

25. "Therefore I tell you, do not be anxious about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink, nor about your body, what you will put on. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing? 26. Look at the birds of the air: they neither sow nor reap nor gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they?"

### **Luke 12:22-31** [4]

## Question 26

### What do you believe when you say:

### I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

#### **Romans 8:28** [5]

28. And we know that for those who love God all things work together for good, for those who are called according to his purpose.

#### **Genesis 18:14** [6]

14. Is anything too hard for the LORD? At the appointed time I will return to you, about this time next year, and Sarah shall have a son."

#### **Romans 8:31-39** [6]

31. What then shall we say to these things? If God is for us, who can be against us? 32. He who did not spare his own Son but gave him up for us all, how will he not also with him graciously give us all things? 33. Who shall bring any charge against God's elect? It is God who justifies. 34. Who is to condemn? Christ Jesus is the one who died — more than that, who was raised — who is at the right hand of God, who indeed is interceding for us. 35. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or danger, or sword? 36. As it is written, "For your sake we are being killed all the day long; we are regarded as sheep to be slaughtered." 37. No, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him who loved us. 38. For I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels nor rulers, nor things present nor things to come, nor powers, 39. nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord.

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

### **Matthew 6:32-33** [7]

**32.** For the Gentiles seek after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them all. **33.** But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.

### **Matthew 7:9-11** [7]

**9.** Or which one of you, if his son asks him for bread, will give him a stone? **10.** Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a serpent? **11.** If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him!

## Question 27

### What do you understand by the providence of God?

God's providence is His almighty and ever present power, [1]  
whereby, as with His hand, He still upholds heaven and earth and all creatures, [2]  
and so governs them that leaf and blade, rain and drought, fruitful and barren years, food and drink, health and sickness, riches and poverty, [3]  
indeed, all things, come not by chance [4] but by His fatherly hand. [5]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

23. "Am I a God at hand, declares the LORD, and not a God far away? 24. Can a man hide himself in secret places so that I cannot see him? declares the LORD. Do I not fill heaven and earth? declares the LORD.

#### **Acts 17:24-28** [1]

24. The God who made the world and everything in it, being Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples made by man, 25. nor is he served by human hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives to all mankind life and breath and everything. 26. And he made from one man every nation of mankind to live on all the face of the earth, having determined allotted periods and the boundaries of their dwelling place, 27. that they should seek God, and perhaps feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is actually not far from each one of us, 28. for "In him we live and move and have our being"; as even some of your own poets have said, "For we are indeed his offspring."

#### **Hebrews 1:3** [2]

3. He is the radiance of the glory of God and the exact imprint of his nature, and he upholds the universe by the word of his power. After making purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

#### **Jeremiah 5:24** [3]

24. They do not say in their hearts, 'Let us fear the LORD our God, who gives the rain in its season, the autumn rain and the spring rain, and keeps for us the weeks appointed for the harvest.'

#### **Acts 14:15-17** [3]

15. "Men, why are you doing these things? We also are men, of like nature with you, and we bring you good news, that you should turn from these vain things to a living God, who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all that is in them. 16. In past generations he allowed all the nations to walk in their own ways. 17. Yet he did not leave himself without witness, for he did good by giving you rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, satisfying your hearts with food and gladness."



## Question 27

### What do you understand by the providence of God?

God's providence is His almighty and ever present power, [1]  
whereby, as with His hand, He still upholds heaven and earth and all creatures, [2]  
and so governs them that leaf and blade, rain and drought, fruitful and barren years, food and drink, health and sickness, riches and poverty,  
[3]  
indeed, all things, come not by chance [4] but by His fatherly hand. [5]

#### **John 9:3** [3]

3. Jesus answered, "It was not that this man sinned, or his parents, but that the works of God might be displayed in him.

#### **Proverbs 22:2** [3]

2. The rich and the poor meet together; the LORD is the Maker of them all.

#### **Proverbs 16:33** [4]

33. The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from the LORD.

#### **Matthew 10:29** [5]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? And not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father.

## Question 28

# What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

We can be patient in adversity, [1] thankful in prosperity, [2] and with a view to the future we can have a firm confidence in our faithful God and Father that no creature shall separate us from His love; [3] for all creatures are so completely in His hand that without His will they cannot so much as move. [4]

### **Job 1:21-22** [1]

21. And he said, "Naked I came from my mother's womb, and naked shall I return. The LORD gave, and the LORD has taken away; blessed be the name of the LORD." 22. In all this Job did not sin or charge God with wrong.

### **Psalms 39:10** [1]

10. Remove your stroke from me; I am spent by the hostility of your hand.

### **James 1:3** [1]

3. for you know that the testing of your faith produces steadfastness.

### **Deuteronomy 8:10** [2]

10. And you shall eat and be full, and you shall bless the LORD your God for the good land he has given you.

### **1 Thessalonians 5:18** [2]

18. give thanks in all circumstances; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.

### **Psalms 55:22** [3]

22. Cast your burden on the LORD, and he will sustain you; he will never permit the righteous to be moved.

### **Romans 5:3-5** [3]

3. Not only that, but we rejoice in our sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance, 4. and endurance produces character, and character produces hope, 5. and hope does not put us to shame, because God's love has been poured into our hearts through the Holy Spirit who has been given to us.

### **Romans 8:38-39** [3]

38. For I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels nor rulers, nor things present nor things to come, nor powers, 39. nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord.

## Question 28

# What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

We can be patient in adversity, [1] thankful in prosperity, [2] and with a view to the future we can have a firm confidence in our faithful God and Father that no creature shall separate us from His love; [3] for all creatures are so completely in His hand that without His will they cannot so much as move. [4]

### **Job 1:12** [4]

12. And the LORD said to Satan, "Behold, all that he has is in your hand. Only against him do not stretch out your hand." So Satan went out from the presence of the LORD.

### **Job 2:6** [4]

6. And the LORD said to Satan, "Behold, he is in your hand; only spare his life."

### **Proverbs 21:1** [4]

1. The king's heart is a stream of water in the hand of the LORD; he turns it wherever he will.

### **Acts 17:24-28** [4]

24. The God who made the world and everything in it, being Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples made by man, 25. nor is he served by human hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives to all mankind life and breath and everything. 26. And he made from one man every nation of mankind to live on all the face of the earth, having determined allotted periods and the boundaries of their dwelling place, 27. that they should seek God, and perhaps feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is actually not far from each one of us, 28. for "In him we live and move and have our being"; as even some of your own poets have said, "For we are indeed his offspring."

## Question 29

# Why is the Son of God called Jesus, that is, Saviour?

Because He saves us from all our sins, [1] and because salvation is not to be sought or found in anyone else. [2]

### **Matthew 1:21** [1]

21. She will bear a son, and you shall call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins.”

### **Hebrews 7:25** [1]

25. Consequently, he is able to save to the uttermost those who draw near to God through him, since he always lives to make intercession for them.

### **Isaiah 43:11** [2]

11. I, I am the LORD, and besides me there is no savior.

### **John 15:4-5** [2]

4. Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit by itself, unless it abides in the vine, neither can you, unless you abide in me. 5. I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing.

### **Acts 4:11-12** [2]

11. This Jesus is the stone that was rejected by you, the builders, which has become the cornerstone. 12. And there is salvation in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved.”

### **1 Timothy 2:5** [2]

5. For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus,

### Question 30

## **Do those believe in the only Saviour Jesus who seek their salvation and well-being from saints, in themselves, or anywhere else?**

No. Though they boast of Him in words, they in fact deny the only Saviour Jesus. [1]

For one of two things must be true: either Jesus is not a complete Saviour, or those who by true faith accept this Saviour must find in Him all that is necessary for their salvation. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:12-13** [1]

12. What I mean is that each one of you says, "I follow Paul," or "I follow Apollos," or "I follow Cephas," or "I follow Christ." 13. Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Or were you baptized in the name of Paul?

#### **Galatians 5:4** [1]

4. You are severed from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you have fallen away from grace.

#### **Colossians 1:19-20** [2]

19. For in him all the fullness of God was pleased to dwell, 20. and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether on earth or in heaven, making peace by the blood of his cross.

#### **Colossians 2:10** [2]

10. and you have been filled in him, who is the head of all rule and authority.

#### **1 John 1:7** [2]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin.

## Question 31

### Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **Psalm 45:7** [1]

7. you have loved righteousness and hated wickedness. Therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness beyond your companions;

#### **Hebrews 1:9** [1]

9. You have loved righteousness and hated wickedness; therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness beyond your companions."

#### **Isaiah 61:1** [1]

1. The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me, because the LORD has anointed me to bring good news to the poor; he has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to those who are bound;

#### **Luke 4:18** [1]

18. "The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim liberty to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty those who are oppressed,

#### **Luke 3:21-22** [1]

21. Now when all the people were baptized, and when Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, the heavens were opened, 22. and the Holy Spirit descended on him in bodily form, like a dove; and a voice came from heaven, "You are my beloved Son; with you I am well pleased."

#### **Deuteronomy 18:15** [2]

15. "The LORD your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among you, from your brothers — it is to him you shall listen —

#### **Acts 3:22** [2]

22. Moses said, 'The Lord God will raise up for you a prophet like me from your brothers. You shall listen to him in whatever he tells you.

#### **John 1:18** [3]

18. No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

### Question 31

## Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **John 15:15** [3]

15. No longer do I call you servants, for the servant does not know what his master is doing; but I have called you friends, for all that I have heard from my Father I have made known to you.

#### **Psalms 110:4** [4]

4. The LORD has sworn and will not change his mind, "You are a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek."

#### **Hebrews 7:17** [4]

17. For it is witnessed of him, "You are a priest forever, after the order of Melchizedek."

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [5]

12. he entered once for all into the holy places, not by means of the blood of goats and calves but by means of his own blood, thus securing an eternal redemption.

#### **Hebrews 10:11-14** [5]

11. And every priest stands daily at his service, offering repeatedly the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. 12. But when Christ had offered for all time a single sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God, 13. waiting from that time until his enemies should be made a footstool for his feet. 14. For by a single offering he has perfected for all time those who are being sanctified.

#### **Romans 8:34** [6]

34. Who is to condemn? Christ Jesus is the one who died — more than that, who was raised — who is at the right hand of God, who indeed is interceding for us.

#### **Hebrews 9:24** [6]

24. For Christ has entered, not into holy places made with hands, which are copies of the true things, but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God on our behalf.

## Question 31

### Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **1 John 2:1** [6]

1. My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.

#### **Zechariah 9:9** [7]

9. Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion! Shout aloud, O daughter of Jerusalem! Behold, your king is coming to you; righteous and having salvation is he, humble and mounted on a donkey, on a colt, the foal of a donkey.

#### **Matthew 21:5** [7]

5. "Say to the daughter of Zion, 'Behold, your king is coming to you, humble, and mounted on a donkey, on a colt, the foal of a beast of burden.'"

#### **Luke 1:33** [7]

33. and he will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end."

#### **Matthew 28:18-20** [8]

18. And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age."

#### **John 10:28** [8]

28. I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand.

#### **Revelation 12:10-11** [8]

10. And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, "Now the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ have come, for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God. 11. And they have conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, for they loved not their lives even unto death.



## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3]  
as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4]  
and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5]  
and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### 1 Corinthians 12:12-27 [1]

#### Joel 2:28 [2]

28. "And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh; your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, and your young men shall see visions.

#### Acts 2:17 [2]

17. "'And in the last days it shall be, God declares, that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh, and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams;

#### 1 John 2:27 [2]

27. But the anointing that you received from him abides in you, and you have no need that anyone should teach you. But as his anointing teaches you about everything, and is true, and is no lie — just as it has taught you, abide in him.

#### Matthew 10:32 [3]

32. So everyone who acknowledges me before men, I also will acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven,

## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3]  
as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4]  
and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5]  
and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### **Romans 10:9-10** [3]

9. because, if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. 10. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.

#### **Hebrews 13:15** [3]

15. Through him then let us continually offer up a sacrifice of praise to God, that is, the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name.

#### **Romans 12:1** [4]

1. I appeal to you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and acceptable to God, which is your spiritual worship.

#### **1 Peter 2:5** [4]

5. you yourselves like living stones are being built up as a spiritual house, to be a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.

#### **1 Peter 2:9** [4]

9. But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light.

#### **Galatians 5:16-17** [5]

16. But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the flesh. 17. For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh, for these are opposed to each other, to keep you from doing the things you want to do.

#### **Ephesians 6:11** [5]

11. Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil.

## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3] as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4] and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5] and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### **1 Timothy 1:18-19** [5]

18. This charge I entrust to you, Timothy, my child, in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you, that by them you may wage the good warfare, 19. holding faith and a good conscience. By rejecting this, some have made shipwreck of their faith,

#### **Matthew 25:34** [6]

34. Then the King will say to those on his right, 'Come, you who are blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.

#### **2 Timothy 2:12** [6]

12. if we endure, we will also reign with him; if we deny him, he also will deny us;

### Question 33

## Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

Because Christ alone is the eternal, natural Son of God. [1] We, however, are children of God by adoption, through grace, for Christ's sake. [2]

#### **John 1:1-3** [1]

1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 2. He was in the beginning with God. 3. All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made.

#### **Hebrews 1** [1]

#### **John 1:14** [1]

14. And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

#### **John 1:18** [1]

18. No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

#### **John 3:16** [1]

16. "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.

#### **Romans 8:32** [1]

32. He who did not spare his own Son but gave him up for us all, how will he not also with him graciously give us all things?

### Question 33

## Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

Because Christ alone is the eternal, natural Son of God. [1] We, however, are children of God by adoption, through grace, for Christ's sake. [2]

#### **1 John 4:9** [1]

9. In this the love of God was made manifest among us, that God sent his only Son into the world, so that we might live through him.

#### **John 1:12** [2]

12. But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God,

#### **Romans 8:14-17** [2]

14. For all who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. 15. For you did not receive the spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you have received the Spirit of adoption as sons, by whom we cry, "Abba! Father!" 16. The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, 17. and if children, then heirs — heirs of God and fellow heirs with Christ, provided we suffer with him in order that we may also be glorified with him.

#### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

6. And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!"

#### **Ephesians 1:5-6** [2]

5. he predestined us for adoption to himself as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will, 6. to the praise of his glorious grace, with which he has blessed us in the Beloved.

## Question 34

### Why do you call Him our Lord?

Because He has ransomed us, body and soul, [1] from all our sins, not with silver or gold but with His precious blood, [2] and has freed us from all the power of the devil to make us His own possession. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:20** [1]

20. for you were bought with a price. So glorify God in your body.

#### **1 Timothy 2:5-6** [1]

5. For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 6. who gave himself as a ransom for all, which is the testimony given at the proper time.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [2]

18. knowing that you were ransomed from the futile ways inherited from your forefathers, not with perishable things such as silver or gold, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or spot.

#### **Colossians 1:13-14** [3]

13. He has delivered us from the domain of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son, 14. in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

#### **Hebrews 2:14-15** [3]

14. Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, 15. and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery.

## Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1] took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3] Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

### **John 1:1** [1]

1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

### **John 10:30-36** [1]

30. I and the Father are one.” 31. The Jews picked up stones again to stone him. 32. Jesus answered them, “I have shown you many good works from the Father; for which of them are you going to stone me?” 33. The Jews answered him, “It is not for a good work that we are going to stone you but for blasphemy, because you, being a man, make yourself God.” 34. Jesus answered them, “Is it not written in your Law, ‘I said, you are gods’? 35. If he called them gods to whom the word of God came — and Scripture cannot be broken — 36. do you say of him whom the Father consecrated and sent into the world, ‘You are blaspheming,’ because I said, ‘I am the Son of God’?”

### **Romans 1:3** [1]

3. concerning his Son, who was descended from David according to the flesh

### **Romans 9:5** [1]

5. To them belong the patriarchs, and from their race, according to the flesh, is the Christ, who is God over all, blessed forever. Amen.

### **Colossians 1:15-17** [1]

15. He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. 16. For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities — all things were created through him and for him. 17. And he is before all things, and in him all things hold together.

### **1 John 5:20** [1]

20. And we know that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding, so that we may know him who is true; and we are in him who is true, in his Son Jesus Christ. He is the true God and eternal life.

## Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

### **Matthew 1:18-23** [2]

18. Now the birth of Jesus Christ took place in this way. When his mother Mary had been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together she was found to be with child from the Holy Spirit. 19. And her husband Joseph, being a just man and unwilling to put her to shame, resolved to divorce her quietly. 20. But as he considered these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not fear to take Mary as your wife, for that which is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit. 21. She will bear a son, and you shall call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins." 22. All this took place to fulfill what the Lord had spoken by the prophet: 23. "Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and they shall call his name Immanuel" (which means, God with us).

### **John 1:14** [2]

14. And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

### **Galatians 4:4** [2]

4. But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of woman, born under the law,

### **Hebrews 2:14** [2]

14. Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil,

### **Luke 1:35** [3]

35. And the angel answered her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore the child to be born will be called holy – the Son of God.



## Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

### **2 Samuel 7:12-16** [4]

12. When your days are fulfilled and you lie down with your fathers, I will raise up your offspring after you, who shall come from your body, and I will establish his kingdom. 13. He shall build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. 14. I will be to him a father, and he shall be to me a son. When he commits iniquity, I will discipline him with the rod of men, with the stripes of the sons of men, 15. but my steadfast love will not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I put away from before you. 16. And your house and your kingdom shall be made sure forever before me. Your throne shall be established forever.”

### **Psalms 132:11** [4]

11. The LORD swore to David a sure oath from which he will not turn back: “One of the sons of your body I will set on your throne.

### **Matthew 1:1** [4]

1. The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

### **Luke 1:32** [4]

32. He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. And the Lord God will give to him the throne of his father David,

### **Romans 1:3** [4]

3. concerning his Son, who was descended from David according to the flesh

### **Philippians 2:7** [5]

7. but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men.

### **Hebrews 2:17** [5]

17. Therefore he had to be made like his brothers in every respect, so that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in the service of God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people.

### Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

#### **Hebrews 4:15** [6]

15. For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who in every respect has been tempted as we are, yet without sin.

#### **Hebrews 7:26-27** [6]

26. For it was indeed fitting that we should have such a high priest, holy, innocent, unstained, separated from sinners, and exalted above the heavens. 27. He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices daily, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself.

## Question 36

### What benefit do you receive from the holy conception and birth of Christ?

He is our Mediator, [1] and with His innocence and perfect holiness covers, in the sight of God, my sin, in which I was conceived and born. [2]

#### **1 Timothy 2:5, 6** [1]

5. For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 6. who gave himself as a ransom for all, which is the testimony given at the proper time.

#### **Hebrews 9:13-15** [1]

13. For if the blood of goats and bulls, and the sprinkling of defiled persons with the ashes of a heifer, sanctify for the purification of the flesh, 14. how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, purify our conscience from dead works to serve the living God. 15. Therefore he is the mediator of a new covenant, so that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance, since a death has occurred that redeems them from the transgressions committed under the first covenant.

#### **Romans 8:3-4** [2]

3. For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh, 4. in order that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Galatians 4:4-5** [2]

4. But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of woman, born under the law, 5. to redeem those who were under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [2]

18. knowing that you were ransomed from the futile ways inherited from your forefathers, not with perishable things such as silver or gold, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or spot.

### Question 37

## What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **Isaiah 53** [1]

#### **1 Timothy 2:6** [1]

6. who gave himself as a ransom for all, which is the testimony given at the proper time.

#### **1 Peter 2:24** [1]

24. He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, that we might die to sin and live to righteousness. By his wounds you have been healed.

#### **1 Peter 3:18** [1]

18. For Christ also suffered once for sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive in the spirit,

#### **Romans 3:25** [2]

25. whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith. This was to show God's righteousness, because in his divine forbearance he had passed over former sins.

## Question 37

### What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **1 Corinthians 5:7** [2]

7. Cleanse out the old leaven that you may be a new lump, as you really are unleavened. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.

#### **Ephesians 5:2** [2]

2. And walk in love, as Christ loved us and gave himself up for us, a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

#### **Hebrews 10:14** [2]

14. For by a single offering he has perfected for all time those who are being sanctified.

#### **1 John 2:2** [2]

2. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **1 John 4:10** [2]

10. In this is love, not that we have loved God but that he loved us and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

#### **Romans 8:1-4** [3]

1. There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. 2. For the law of the Spirit of life has set you free in Christ Jesus from the law of sin and death. 3. For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh, 4. in order that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.

#### **Galatians 3:13** [3]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us — for it is written, “Cursed is everyone who is hanged on a tree” —

#### **Colossians 1:13** [3]

13. He has delivered us from the domain of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son,

### Question 37

## What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [3]

12. he entered once for all into the holy places, not by means of the blood of goats and calves but by means of his own blood, thus securing an eternal redemption.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [3]

18. knowing that you were ransomed from the futile ways inherited from your forefathers, not with perishable things such as silver or gold, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or spot.

#### **John 3:16** [4]

16. "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.

#### **Romans 3:24-26** [4]

24. and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, 25. whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith. This was to show God's righteousness, because in his divine forbearance he had passed over former sins. 26. It was to show his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [4]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Hebrews 9:15** [4]

15. Therefore he is the mediator of a new covenant, so that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance, since a death has occurred that redeems them from the transgressions committed under the first covenant.

## Question 38

### Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

Though innocent, Christ was condemned by an earthly judge, [1]  
and so He freed us from the severe judgment of God that was to fall on us. [2]

#### **Luke 23:13-24** [1]

**13.** Pilate then called together the chief priests and the rulers and the people, **14.** and said to them, "You brought me this man as one who was misleading the people. And after examining him before you, behold, I did not find this man guilty of any of your charges against him. **15.** Neither did Herod, for he sent him back to us. Look, nothing deserving death has been done by him. **16.** I will therefore punish and release him." **18.** But they all cried out together, "Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas" — **19.** a man who had been thrown into prison for an insurrection started in the city and for murder. **20.** Pilate addressed them once more, desiring to release Jesus, **21.** but they kept shouting, "Crucify, crucify him!" **22.** A third time he said to them, "Why? What evil has he done? I have found in him no guilt deserving death. I will therefore punish and release him." **23.** But they were urgent, demanding with loud cries that he should be crucified. And their voices prevailed. **24.** So Pilate decided that their demand should be granted.

#### **John 19:4** [1]

**4.** Pilate went out again and said to them, "See, I am bringing him out to you that you may know that I find no guilt in him."

#### **John 19:12-16** [1]

**12.** From then on Pilate sought to release him, but the Jews cried out, "If you release this man, you are not Caesar's friend. Everyone who makes himself a king opposes Caesar." **13.** So when Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus out and sat down on the judgment seat at a place called The Stone Pavement, and in Aramaic Gabbatha. **14.** Now it was the day of Preparation of the Passover. It was about the sixth hour. He said to the Jews, "Behold your King!" **15.** They cried out, "Away with him, away with him, crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Shall I crucify your King?" The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar." **16.** So he delivered him over to them to be crucified. **<b>The Crucifixion</b>** So they took Jesus,

#### **Isaiah 53:4-5** [2]

**4.** Surely he has borne our griefs and carried our sorrows; yet we esteemed him stricken, smitten by God, and afflicted. **5.** But he was pierced for our transgressions; he was crushed for our iniquities; upon him was the chastisement that brought us peace, and with his wounds we are healed.

### Question 38

## Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

Though innocent, Christ was condemned by an earthly judge, [1]  
and so He freed us from the severe judgment of God that was to fall on us. [2]

### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

### **Galatians 3:13** [2]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us — for it is written, “Cursed is everyone who is hanged on a tree” —



### Question 39

## **Does it have a special meaning that Christ was crucified and did not die in a different way?**

Yes. Thereby I am assured that He took upon Himself the curse which lay on me, for a crucified one was cursed by God. [1]

### **Deuteronomy 21:23** [1]

23. his body shall not remain all night on the tree, but you shall bury him the same day, for a hanged man is cursed by God. You shall not defile your land that the LORD your God is giving you for an inheritance.

### **Galatians 3:13** [1]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us — for it is written, “Cursed is everyone who is hanged on a tree” —

## Question 40

### Why was it necessary for Christ to humble Himself even unto death?

Because of the justice and truth of God [1] satisfaction for our sins could be made in no other way than by the death of the Son of God. [2]

#### **Genesis 2:17** [1]

17. but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die.”

#### **Hebrews 2:15** [2]

15. and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery.

#### **Romans 8:3** [2]

3. For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh,

#### **Philippians 2:8** [2]

8. And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.

#### **Hebrews 2:9** [2]

9. But we see him who for a little while was made lower than the angels, namely Jesus, crowned with glory and honor because of the suffering of death, so that by the grace of God he might taste death for everyone.

#### **Hebrews 2:14** [2]

14. Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil,

## Question 41

### Why was he buried?

His burial testified that He had really died. [1]

#### **Isaiah 53:9** [1]

9. And they made his grave with the wicked and with a rich man in his death, although he had done no violence, and there was no deceit in his mouth.

#### **John 19:38-42** [1]

38. After these things Joseph of Arimathea, who was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus, and Pilate gave him permission. So he came and took away his body. 39. Nicodemus also, who earlier had come to Jesus by night, came bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about seventy-five pounds in weight. 40. So they took the body of Jesus and bound it in linen cloths with the spices, as is the burial custom of the Jews. 41. Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb in which no one had yet been laid. 42. So because of the Jewish day of Preparation, since the tomb was close at hand, they laid Jesus there.

#### **Acts 13:29** [1]

29. And when they had carried out all that was written of him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in a tomb.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:3-4** [1]

3. For I delivered to you as of first importance what I also received: that Christ died for our sins in accordance with the Scriptures, 4. that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day in accordance with the Scriptures,

## Question 42

### Since Christ has died for us, why do we still have to die?

Our death is not a payment for our sins, but it puts an end to sin and is an entrance into eternal life. [1]

#### **John 5:24** [1]

24. Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life. He does not come into judgment, but has passed from death to life.

#### **Philippians 1:21-23** [1]

21. For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. 22. If I am to live in the flesh, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which I shall choose I cannot tell. 23. I am hard pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, for that is far better.

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:9-10** [1]

9. For God has not destined us for wrath, but to obtain salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ, 10. who died for us so that whether we are awake or asleep we might live with him.

### Question 43

## What further benefit do we receive from Christ's sacrifice and death on the cross?

Through Christ's death our old nature is crucified, put to death, and buried with Him, [1]  
so that the evil desires of the flesh may no longer reign in us, [2] but that we may offer ourselves to Him as a sacrifice of thankfulness. [3]

#### **Romans 6:5-11** [1]

5. For if we have been united with him in a death like his, we shall certainly be united with him in a resurrection like his. 6. We know that our old self was crucified with him in order that the body of sin might be brought to nothing, so that we would no longer be enslaved to sin. 7. For one who has died has been set free from sin. 8. Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. We know that Christ, being raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has dominion over him. 10. For the death he died he died to sin, once for all, but the life he lives he lives to God. 11. So you also must consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.

#### **Colossians 2:11-12** [1]

11. In him also you were circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, by putting off the body of the flesh, by the circumcision of Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the powerful working of God, who raised him from the dead.

#### **Romans 6:12-14** [2]

12. Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, to make you obey its passions. 13. Do not present your members to sin as instruments for unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life, and your members to God as instruments for righteousness. 14. For sin will have no dominion over you, since you are not under law but under grace.

#### **Romans 12:1** [3]

1. I appeal to you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and acceptable to God, which is your spiritual worship.

#### **Ephesians 5:1-2** [3]

1. Therefore be imitators of God, as beloved children. 2. And walk in love, as Christ loved us and gave himself up for us, a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

## Question 44

### Why is there added: He descended into hell?

In my greatest sorrows and temptations I may be assured and comforted that my Lord Jesus Christ, by His unspeakable anguish, pain, terror, and agony, which He endured throughout all His sufferings [1] but especially on the cross, has delivered me from the anguish and torment of hell. [2]

#### **Psalm 18:5-6** [1]

5. the cords of Sheol entangled me; the snares of death confronted me. 6. In my distress I called upon the LORD; to my God I cried for help. From his temple he heard my voice, and my cry to him reached his ears.

#### **Psalm 116:3** [1]

3. The snares of death encompassed me; the pangs of Sheol laid hold on me; I suffered distress and anguish.

#### **Matthew 26:36-46** [1]

36. Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to his disciples, "Sit here, while I go over there and pray." 37. And taking with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, he began to be sorrowful and troubled. 38. Then he said to them, "My soul is very sorrowful, even to death; remain here, and watch with me." 39. And going a little farther he fell on his face and prayed, saying, "My Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me; nevertheless, not as I will, but as you will." 40. And he came to the disciples and found them sleeping. And he said to Peter, "So, could you not watch with me one hour? 41. Watch and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak." 42. Again, for the second time, he went away and prayed, "My Father, if this cannot pass unless I drink it, your will be done." 43. And again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. 44. So, leaving them again, he went away and prayed for the third time, saying the same words again. 45. Then he came to the disciples and said to them, "Sleep and take your rest later on. See, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. 46. Rise, let us be going; see, my betrayer is at hand."

## Question 44

### Why is there added: He descended into hell?

In my greatest sorrows and temptations I may be assured and comforted that my Lord Jesus Christ, by His unspeakable anguish, pain, terror, and agony, which He endured throughout all His sufferings [1]  
but especially on the cross, has delivered me from the anguish and torment of hell. [2]

#### **Matthew 27:45-46** [1]

**45.** Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land until the ninth hour. **46.** And about the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?" that is, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?"

#### **Isaiah 53** [2]

#### **Hebrews 5:7-10** [1]

**7.** In the days of his flesh, Jesus offered up prayers and supplications, with loud cries and tears, to him who was able to save him from death, and he was heard because of his reverence. **8.** Although he was a son, he learned obedience through what he suffered. **9.** And being made perfect, he became the source of eternal salvation to all who obey him, **10.** being designated by God a high priest after the order of Melchizedek.

## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Romans 4:25** [1]

25. who was delivered up for our trespasses and raised for our justification.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:16-20** [1]

16. For if the dead are not raised, not even Christ has been raised.  
17. And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile and you are still in your sins. 18. Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ have perished. 19. If in Christ we have hope in this life only, we are of all people most to be pitied. 20. But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep.

#### **1 Peter 1:3-5** [1]

3. Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! According to his great mercy, he has caused us to be born again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4. to an inheritance that is imperishable, undefiled, and unfading, kept in heaven for you, 5. who by God's power are being guarded through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

#### **Romans 6:5-11** [2]

5. For if we have been united with him in a death like his, we shall certainly be united with him in a resurrection like his. 6. We know that our old self was crucified with him in order that the body of sin might be brought to nothing, so that we would no longer be enslaved to sin. 7. For one who has died has been set free from sin. 8. Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. We know that Christ, being raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has dominion over him. 10. For the death he died he died to sin, once for all, but the life he lives he lives to God. 11. So you also must consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.

#### **Ephesians 2:4-6** [2]

4. But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, 5. even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us alive together with Christ — by grace you have been saved — 6. and raised us up with him and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,



## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Colossians 3:1-4** [2]

1. If then you have been raised with Christ, seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. 2. Set your minds on things that are above, not on things that are on earth. 3. For you have died, and your life is hidden with Christ in God. 4. When Christ who is your life appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.

#### **Romans 8:11** [3]

11. If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he who raised Christ Jesus from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through his Spirit who dwells in you.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:12-23** [3]

12. Now if Christ is proclaimed as raised from the dead, how can some of you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? 13. But if there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised. 14. And if Christ has not been raised, then our preaching is in vain and your faith is in vain. 15. We are even found to be misrepresenting God, because we testified about God that he raised Christ, whom he did not raise if it is true that the dead are not raised. 16. For if the dead are not raised, not even Christ has been raised. 17. And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile and you are still in your sins. 18. Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ have perished. 19. If in Christ we have hope in this life only, we are of all people most to be pitied. 20. But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. 21. For as by a man came death, by a man has come also the resurrection of the dead. 22. For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ shall all be made alive. 23. But each in his own order: Christ the firstfruits, then at his coming those who belong to Christ.

## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Philippians 3:20-21** [3]

**20.** But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we await a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, **21.** who will transform our lowly body to be like his glorious body, by the power that enables him even to subject all things to himself.

## Question 46

### What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?

That Christ, before the eyes of His disciples, was taken up from the earth into heaven, [1] and that He is there for our benefit [2] until He comes again to judge the living and the dead. [3]

#### **Mark 16:19** [1]

19. So then the Lord Jesus, after he had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

#### **Luke 24:50, 51** [1]

50. And he led them out as far as Bethany, and lifting up his hands he blessed them. 51. While he blessed them, he parted from them and was carried up into heaven.

#### **Acts 1:9-11** [1]

9. And when he had said these things, as they were looking on, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight. 10. And while they were gazing into heaven as he went, behold, two men stood by them in white robes, 11. and said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven."

#### **Romans 8:34** [2]

34. Who is to condemn? Christ Jesus is the one who died — more than that, who was raised — who is at the right hand of God, who indeed is interceding for us.

#### **Hebrews 4:14** [2]

14. Since then we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus, the Son of God, let us hold fast our confession.

#### **Hebrews 7:23-25** [2]

23. The former priests were many in number, because they were prevented by death from continuing in office, 24. but he holds his priesthood permanently, because he continues forever. 25. Consequently, he is able to save to the uttermost those who draw near to God through him, since he always lives to make intercession for them.

#### **Hebrews 9:24** [2]

24. For Christ has entered, not into holy places made with hands, which are copies of the true things, but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God on our behalf.

#### **Matthew 24:30** [3]

30. Then will appear in heaven the sign of the Son of Man, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

### Question 46

## **What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?**

That Christ, before the eyes of His disciples, was taken up from the earth into heaven, [1] and that He is there for our benefit [2] until He comes again to judge the living and the dead. [3]

### **Acts 1:11**[3]

11. and said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven."

## Question 47

### Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?

Christ is true man and true God. With respect to His human nature He is no longer on earth, [1]  
but with respect to His divinity, majesty, grace, and Spirit He is never absent from us. [2]

#### **Matthew 28:20** [1]

20. teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

#### **Matthew 26:11** [2]

11. For you always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me.

#### **John 16:28** [2]

28. I came from the Father and have come into the world, and now I am leaving the world and going to the Father.”

#### **John 17:11** [2]

11. And I am no longer in the world, but they are in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them in your name, which you have given me, that they may be one, even as we are one.

#### **Acts 3:19-21** [2]

19. Repent therefore, and turn back, that your sins may be blotted out, 20. that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that he may send the Christ appointed for you, Jesus, 21. whom heaven must receive until the time for restoring all the things about which God spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets long ago.

#### **Hebrews 8:4** [2]

4. Now if he were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are priests who offer gifts according to the law.

#### **Matthew 28:18-20** [3]

18. And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

### Question 47

## Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?

Christ is true man and true God. With respect to His human nature He is no longer on earth, [1]  
but with respect to His divinity, majesty, grace, and Spirit He is never absent from us. [2]

### **John 14:16-19** [3]

**16.** And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever, **17.** even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells with you and will be in you. **18.** "I will not leave you as orphans; I will come to you. **19.** Yet a little while and the world will see me no more, but you will see me. Because I live, you also will live.

### **John 16:13** [3]

**13.** When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come.

### Question 48

**But are the two natures in Christ not separated from each other if His human nature is not present wherever His divinity is?**

Not at all, for His divinity has no limits and is present everywhere. [1]

So it must follow that His divinity is indeed beyond the human nature which He has taken on and nevertheless is within this human nature and remains personally united with it. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

23. "Am I a God at hand, declares the LORD, and not a God far away? 24. Can a man hide himself in secret places so that I cannot see him? declares the LORD. Do I not fill heaven and earth? declares the LORD.

#### **Colossians 2:9** [2]

9. For in him the whole fullness of deity dwells bodily,

#### **Acts 7:48-49** [1]

48. Yet the Most High does not dwell in houses made by hands, as the prophet says, 49. "Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool. What kind of house will you build for me, says the Lord, or what is the place of my rest?

#### **John 1:14** [2]

14. And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

#### **John 3:13** [2]

13. No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven, the Son of Man.

## Question 49

### How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

First, He is our Advocate in heaven before His Father. [1]

Second, we have our flesh in heaven as a sure pledge that He, our Head, will also take us, His members, up to Himself. [2]

Third, He sends us His Spirit as a counter-pledge, [3]

by whose power we seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God, and not the things that are on earth. [4]

#### **Romans 8:34** [1]

34. Who is to condemn? Christ Jesus is the one who died — more than that, who was raised — who is at the right hand of God, who indeed is interceding for us.

#### **1 John 2:1** [1]

1. My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.

#### **John 14:2** [2]

2. In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you?

#### **John 17:24** [2]

24. Father, I desire that they also, whom you have given me, may be with me where I am, to see my glory that you have given me because you loved me before the foundation of the world.

#### **Ephesians 2:4-6** [2]

4. But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, 5. even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us alive together with Christ — by grace you have been saved — 6. and raised us up with him and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,

#### **John 14:16** [3]

16. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever,

#### **Acts 2:33** [3]

33. Being therefore exalted at the right hand of God, and having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, he has poured out this that you yourselves are seeing and hearing.

#### **2 Corinthians 1:21-22** [3]

21. And it is God who establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us, 22. and who has also put his seal on us and given us his Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee.



## Question 49

### How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

First, He is our Advocate in heaven before His Father. [1]

Second, we have our flesh in heaven as a sure pledge that He, our Head, will also take us, His members, up to Himself. [2]

Third, He sends us His Spirit as a counter-pledge, [3]

by whose power we seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God, and not the things that are on earth. [4]

#### **2 Corinthians 5:5** [3]

5. He who has prepared us for this very thing is God, who has given us the Spirit as a guarantee.

#### **Colossians 3:1-4** [4]

1. If then you have been raised with Christ, seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. 2. Set your minds on things that are above, not on things that are on earth. 3. For you have died, and your life is hidden with Christ in God. 4. When Christ who is your life appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.

## Question 50

### Why is it added, And sits at the right hand of God?

Christ ascended into heaven to manifest Himself there as Head of His Church, [1] through whom the Father governs all things. [2]

#### **Ephesians 1:20-23** [1]

20. that he worked in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, 21. far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and above every name that is named, not only in this age but also in the one to come. 22. And he put all things under his feet and gave him as head over all things to the church, 23. which is his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all.

#### **Colossians 1:18** [1]

18. And he is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that in everything he might be preeminent.

#### **Matthew 28:18** [2]

18. And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.

#### **John 5:22-23** [2]

22. For the Father judges no one, but has given all judgment to the Son, 23. that all may honor the Son, just as they honor the Father. Whoever does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent him.

## Question 51

### How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

First, by His Holy Spirit He pours out heavenly gifts upon us, His members. [1]

Second, by His power He defends and preserves us against all enemies. [2]

#### **Acts 2:33** [1]

**33.** Being therefore exalted at the right hand of God, and having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, he has poured out this that you yourselves are seeing and hearing.

#### **Ephesians 4:7-12** [1]

**7.** But grace was given to each one of us according to the measure of Christ's gift. **8.** Therefore it says, "When he ascended on high he led a host of captives, and he gave gifts to men." **9.** (In saying, "He ascended," what does it mean but that he had also descended into the lower regions, the earth? **10.** He who descended is the one who also ascended far above all the heavens, that he might fill all things.) **11.** And he gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers, **12.** to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ,

#### **Psalms 2:9** [2]

**9.** You shall break them with a rod of iron and dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

#### **Psalms 110:1-2** [2]

**1.** The LORD says to my Lord: "Sit at my right hand, until I make your enemies your footstool." **2.** The LORD sends forth from Zion your mighty scepter. Rule in the midst of your enemies!

#### **John 10:27-30** [2]

**27.** My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. **28.** I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. **29.** My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand. **30.** I and the Father are one."

## Question 51

### How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

First, by His Holy Spirit He pours out heavenly gifts upon us, His members. [1]

Second, by His power He defends and preserves us against all enemies. [2]

#### **Revelation 19:11-16** [2]

**11.** Then I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse! The one sitting on it is called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he judges and makes war. **12.** His eyes are like a flame of fire, and on his head are many diadems, and he has a name written that no one knows but himself. **13.** He is clothed in a robe dipped in blood, and the name by which he is called is The Word of God. **14.** And the armies of heaven, arrayed in fine linen, white and pure, were following him on white horses. **15.** From his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations, and he will rule them with a rod of iron. He will tread the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God the Almighty. **16.** On his robe and on his thigh he has a name written, King of kings and Lord of lords.

## Question 52

### What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?

In all my sorrow and persecution I lift up my head and eagerly await as judge from heaven the very same person who before has submitted Himself to the judgment of God for my sake, and has removed all the curse from me. [1]

He will cast all His and my enemies into everlasting condemnation, but He will take me and all His chosen ones to Himself into heavenly joy and glory. [2]

#### **Luke 21:28** [1]

28. Now when these things begin to take place, straighten up and raise your heads, because your redemption is drawing near.”

#### **Romans 8:22-25** [1]

22. For we know that the whole creation has been groaning together in the pains of childbirth until now. 23. And not only the creation, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies. 24. For in this hope we were saved. Now hope that is seen is not hope. For who hopes for what he sees? 25. But if we hope for what we do not see, we wait for it with patience.

#### **Philippians 3:20-21** [1]

20. But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we await a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, 21. who will transform our lowly body to be like his glorious body, by the power that enables him even to subject all things to himself.

#### **Titus 2:13-14** [1]

13. waiting for our blessed hope, the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ, 14. who gave himself for us to redeem us from all lawlessness and to purify for himself a people for his own possession who are zealous for good works.

## Question 52

### **What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?**

In all my sorrow and persecution I lift up my head and eagerly await as judge from heaven the very same person who before has submitted Himself to the judgment of God for my sake, and has removed all the curse from me. [1]

He will cast all His and my enemies into everlasting condemnation, but He will take me and all His chosen ones to Himself into heavenly joy and glory. [2]

#### **Matthew 25:31-46** [2]

#### **1 Thessalonians 4:16-17** [2]

**16.** For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a cry of command, with the voice of an archangel, and with the sound of the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ will rise first. **17.** Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we will always be with the Lord.

#### **2 Thessalonians 1:6-10** [2]

**6.** since indeed God considers it just to repay with affliction those who afflict you, **7.** and to grant relief to you who are afflicted as well as to us, when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels **8.** in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. **9.** They will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his might, **10.** when he comes on that day to be glorified in his saints, and to be marveled at among all who have believed, because our testimony to you was believed.

## Question 53

### What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

First, He is, together with the Father and the Son, true and eternal God. [1] Second, He is also given to me, [2] to make me by true faith share in Christ and all His benefits, [3] to comfort me, [4] and to remain with me forever. [5]

#### **Genesis 1:1-2** [1]

1. In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. 2. The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Acts 5:3-4** [1]

3. But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back for yourself part of the proceeds of the land? 4. While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own? And after it was sold, was it not at your disposal? Why is it that you have contrived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to man but to God."

#### **1 Corinthians 3:16** [1]

16. Do you not know that you are God's temple and that God's Spirit dwells in you?

#### **1 Corinthians 6:19** [2]

19. Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own,

#### **2 Corinthians 1:21-22** [2]

21. And it is God who establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us, 22. and who has also put his seal on us and given us his Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee.

#### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

6. And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!"

#### **Ephesians 1:13** [2]

13. In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,

#### **Galatians 3:14** [3]

14. so that in Christ Jesus the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles, so that we might receive the promised Spirit through faith.

## Question 53

### What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

First, He is, together with the Father and the Son, true and eternal God. [1] Second, He is also given to me, [2] to make me by true faith share in Christ and all His benefits, [3] to comfort me, [4] and to remain with me forever. [5]

#### **1 Peter 1:2** [3]

2. according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, in the sanctification of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and for sprinkling with his blood: May grace and peace be multiplied to you.

#### **John 15:26** [4]

26. "But when the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, he will bear witness about me.

#### **Acts 9:31** [4]

31. So the church throughout all Judea and Galilee and Samaria had peace and was being built up. And walking in the fear of the Lord and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, it multiplied.

#### **John 14:16-17** [5]

16. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever, 17. even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells with you and will be in you.

#### **1 Peter 4:14** [5]

14. If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests upon you.



## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **John 10:11** [1]

11. I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.

#### **Acts 20:28** [1]

28. Pay careful attention to yourselves and to all the flock, in which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to care for the church of God, which he obtained with his own blood.

#### **Ephesians 4:11-13** [1]

11. And he gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers, 12. to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ, 13. until we all attain to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to mature manhood, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ,

#### **Colossians 1:18** [1]

18. And he is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that in everything he might be preeminent.

#### **Genesis 26:4** [2]

4. I will multiply your offspring as the stars of heaven and will give to your offspring all these lands. And in your offspring all the nations of the earth shall be blessed,

#### **Revelation 5:9** [2]

9. And they sang a new song, saying, "Worthy are you to take the scroll and to open its seals, for you were slain, and by your blood you ransomed people for God from every tribe and language and people and nation,

#### **Isaiah 59:21** [3]

21. "And as for me, this is my covenant with them," says the LORD: "My Spirit that is upon you, and my words that I have put in your mouth, shall not depart out of your mouth, or out of the mouth of your offspring, or out of the mouth of your children's offspring," says the LORD, "from this time forth and forevermore."

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [3]

26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **Psalms 129:1-5** [4]

1. "Greatly have they afflicted me from my youth" — let Israel now say — 2. "Greatly have they afflicted me from my youth, yet they have not prevailed against me. 3. The plowers plowed upon my back; they made long their furrows." 4. The LORD is righteous; he has cut the cords of the wicked. 5. May all who hate Zion be put to shame and turned backward!

#### **Matthew 16:18** [4]

18. And I tell you, you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

#### **John 10:28-30** [4]

28. I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. 29. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand. 30. I and the Father are one."

#### **Romans 1:16** [5]

16. For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.

#### **Romans 10:14-17** [5]

14. How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? 15. And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the good news!" 16. But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed what he has heard from us?" 17. So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ.

#### **Ephesians 5:26** [5]

26. that he might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word,

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **Acts 2:42-47** [6]

**42.** And they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and the prayers. **43.** And awe came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were being done through the apostles. **44.** And all who believed were together and had all things in common. **45.** And they were selling their possessions and belongings and distributing the proceeds to all, as any had need. **46.** And day by day, attending the temple together and breaking bread in their homes, they received their food with glad and generous hearts, **47.** praising God and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to their number day by day those who were being saved.

#### **Ephesians 4:1-6** [6]

**1.** I therefore, a prisoner for the Lord, urge you to walk in a manner worthy of the calling to which you have been called, **2.** with all humility and gentleness, with patience, bearing with one another in love, **3.** eager to maintain the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. **4.** There is one body and one Spirit — just as you were called to the one hope that belongs to your call — **5.** one Lord, one faith, one baptism, **6.** one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.

#### **Romans 8:29** [7]

**29.** For those whom he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, in order that he might be the firstborn among many brothers.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **Ephesians 1:3-14** [7]

**3.** Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places, **4.** even as he chose us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before him. In love **5.** he predestined us for adoption to himself as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will, **6.** to the praise of his glorious grace, with which he has blessed us in the Beloved. **7.** In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace, **8.** which he lavished upon us, in all wisdom and insight **9.** making known to us the mystery of his will, according to his purpose, which he set forth in Christ **10.** as a plan for the fullness of time, to unite all things in him, things in heaven and things on earth. **11.** In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of him who works all things according to the counsel of his will, **12.** so that we who were the first to hope in Christ might be to the praise of his glory. **13.** In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, **14.** who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.

#### **1 John 3:14** [8]

**14.** We know that we have passed out of death into life, because we love the brothers. Whoever does not love abides in death.

#### **1 John 3:19-21** [8]

**19.** By this we shall know that we are of the truth and reassure our heart before him; **20.** for whenever our heart condemns us, God is greater than our heart, and he knows everything. **21.** Beloved, if our heart does not condemn us, we have confidence before God;

#### **Psalms 23:6** [9]

**6.** Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life, and I shall dwell in the house of the LORD forever.

#### **John 10:27-28** [9]

**27.** My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. **28.** I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:4-9** [9]

4. I give thanks to my God always for you because of the grace of God that was given you in Christ Jesus, 5. that in every way you were enriched in him in all speech and all knowledge – 6. even as the testimony about Christ was confirmed among you – 7. so that you are not lacking in any gift, as you wait for the revealing of our Lord Jesus Christ, 8. who will sustain you to the end, guiltless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. 9. God is faithful, by whom you were called into the fellowship of his Son, Jesus Christ our Lord.

#### **1 Peter 1:3-5** [9]

3. Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! According to his great mercy, he has caused us to be born again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4. to an inheritance that is imperishable, undefiled, and unfading, kept in heaven for you, 5. who by God's power are being guarded through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

## Question 55

### What do you understand by the communion of saints?

First, that believers, all and everyone, as members of Christ have communion with Him and share in all His treasures and gifts. [1]

Second, that everyone is duty-bound to use his gifts readily and cheerfully for the benefit and well-being of the other members. [2]

#### **Romans 8:32** [1]

32. He who did not spare his own Son but gave him up for us all, how will he not also with him graciously give us all things?

#### **1 Corinthians 6:17** [1]

17. But he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:4-7** [1]

4. Now there are varieties of gifts, but the same Spirit; 5. and there are varieties of service, but the same Lord; 6. and there are varieties of activities, but it is the same God who empowers them all in everyone. 7. To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:12** [1]

12. For just as the body is one and has many members, and all the members of the body, though many, are one body, so it is with Christ.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:13** [1]

13. For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body – Jews or Greeks, slaves or free – and all were made to drink of one Spirit.

#### **1 John 1:3** [1]

3. that which we have seen and heard we proclaim also to you, so that you too may have fellowship with us; and indeed our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ.

#### **Romans 12:4-8** [2]

4. For as in one body we have many members, and the members do not all have the same function, 5. so we, though many, are one body in Christ, and individually members one of another. 6. Having gifts that differ according to the grace given to us, let us use them: if prophecy, in proportion to our faith; 7. if service, in our serving; the one who teaches, in his teaching; 8. the one who exhorts, in his exhortation; the one who contributes, in generosity; the one who leads, with zeal; the one who does acts of mercy, with cheerfulness.

## Question 55

### What do you understand by the communion of saints?

First, that believers, all and everyone, as members of Christ have communion with Him and share in all His treasures and gifts. [1]

Second, that everyone is duty-bound to use his gifts readily and cheerfully for the benefit and well-being of the other members. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 12:20-27** [2]

**20.** As it is, there are many parts, yet one body. **21.** The eye cannot say to the hand, "I have no need of you," nor again the head to the feet, "I have no need of you." **22.** On the contrary, the parts of the body that seem to be weaker are indispensable, **23.** and on those parts of the body that we think less honorable we bestow the greater honor, and our unpresentable parts are treated with greater modesty, **24.** which our more presentable parts do not require. But God has so composed the body, giving greater honor to the part that lacked it, **25.** that there may be no division in the body, but that the members may have the same care for one another. **26.** If one member suffers, all suffer together; if one member is honored, all rejoice together. **27.** Now you are the body of Christ and individually members of it.

#### **1 Corinthians 13:1-7** [2]

**1.** If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but have not love, I am a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. **2.** And if I have prophetic powers, and understand all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. **3.** If I give away all I have, and if I deliver up my body to be burned, but have not love, I gain nothing. **4.** Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant **5.** or rude. It does not insist on its own way; it is not irritable or resentful; **6.** it does not rejoice at wrongdoing, but rejoices with the truth. **7.** Love bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things.

#### **Philippians 2:4-8** [2]

**4.** Let each of you look not only to his own interests, but also to the interests of others. **5.** Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, **6.** who, though he was in the form of God, did not count equality with God a thing to be grasped, **7.** but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men. **8.** And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.

## Question 56

### What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

I believe that God, because of Christ's satisfaction, will no more remember my sins, [1]  
nor my sinful nature, against which I have to struggle all my life, [2]  
but He will graciously grant me the righteousness of Christ, that I may never come into condemnation. [3]

#### **Psalm 103:3** [1]

3. who forgives all your iniquity, who heals all your diseases,

#### **Psalm 103:4** [1]

4. who redeems your life from the pit, who crowns you with  
steadfast love and mercy,

#### **Psalm 103:10** [1]

10. He does not deal with us according to our sins, nor repay us  
according to our iniquities.

#### **Psalm 103:12** [1]

12. as far as the east is from the west, so far does he remove our  
transgressions from us.

#### **Micah 7:18, 19** [1]

18. Who is a God like you, pardoning iniquity and passing over  
transgression for the remnant of his inheritance? He does not  
retain his anger forever, because he delights in steadfast love. 19.  
He will again have compassion on us; he will tread our iniquities  
underfoot. You will cast all our sins into the depths of the sea.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:18-21** [1]

18. All this is from God, who through Christ reconciled us to  
himself and gave us the ministry of reconciliation; 19. that is, in  
Christ God was reconciling the world to himself, not counting  
their trespasses against them, and entrusting to us the message  
of reconciliation. 20. Therefore, we are ambassadors for Christ,  
God making his appeal through us. We implore you on behalf of  
Christ, be reconciled to God. 21. For our sake he made him to be  
sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the  
righteousness of God.

#### **1 John 1:7** [1]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have  
fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus his Son  
cleanses us from all sin.

#### **1 John 2:2** [1]

2. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also  
for the sins of the whole world.



## Question 56

### What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

I believe that God, because of Christ's satisfaction, will no more remember my sins, [1]  
nor my sinful nature, against which I have to struggle all my life, [2]  
but He will graciously grant me the righteousness of Christ, that I may never come into condemnation. [3]

#### **Romans 7:21-25** [2]

21. So I find it to be a law that when I want to do right, evil lies close at hand. 22. For I delight in the law of God, in my inner being, 23. but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members. 24. Wretched man that I am! Who will deliver me from this body of death? 25. Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind, but with my flesh I serve the law of sin.

#### **John 3:17-18** [3]

17. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him. 18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe is condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.

#### **John 5:24** [3]

24. Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life. He does not come into judgment, but has passed from death to life.

#### **Romans 8:1-2** [3]

1. There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. 2. For the law of the Spirit of life has set you free in Christ Jesus from the law of sin and death.

## Question 57

### What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

Not only shall my soul after this life immediately be taken up to Christ, my Head, [1]  
but also this my flesh, raised by the power of Christ, shall be reunited with my soul and made like Christ's glorious body. [2]

#### **Luke 16:22** [1]

22. The poor man died and was carried by the angels to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried,

#### **Luke 23:43** [1]

43. And he said to him, "Truly, I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise."

#### **Philippians 1:21-23** [1]

21. For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. 22. If I am to live in the flesh, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which I shall choose I cannot tell. 23. I am hard pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, for that is far better.

#### **Job 19:25-26** [2]

25. For I know that my Redeemer lives, and at the last he will stand upon the earth. 26. And after my skin has been thus destroyed, yet in my flesh I shall see God,

#### **1 Corinthians 15:20** [2]

20. But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:42-46** [2]

42. So is it with the resurrection of the dead. What is sown is perishable; what is raised is imperishable. 43. It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory. It is sown in weakness; it is raised in power. 44. It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body. 45. Thus it is written, "The first man Adam became a living being"; the last Adam became a life-giving spirit. 46. But it is not the spiritual that is first but the natural, and then the spiritual.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:54** [2]

54. When the perishable puts on the imperishable, and the mortal puts on immortality, then shall come to pass the saying that is written: "Death is swallowed up in victory."

#### **Philippians 3:21** [2]

21. who will transform our lowly body to be like his glorious body, by the power that enables him even to subject all things to himself.

### Question 57

## What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

Not only shall my soul after this life immediately be taken up to Christ, my Head, [1]  
but also this my flesh, raised by the power of Christ, shall be reunited with my soul and made like Christ's glorious body. [2]

### 1 John 3:2 [2]

2. Beloved, we are God's children now, and what we will be has not yet appeared; but we know that when he appears we shall be like him, because we shall see him as he is.

## Question 58

### What comfort do you receive from the article about the life everlasting?

Since I now already feel in my heart the beginning of eternal joy, [1]

I shall after this life possess perfect blessedness, such as no eye has seen, nor ear heard, nor the heart of man conceived-- a blessedness in which to praise God forever. [2]

#### **John 17:3** [1]

3. And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

#### **Romans 14:17** [1]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking but of righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:2-3** [1]

2. For in this tent we groan, longing to put on our heavenly dwelling, 3. if indeed by putting it on we may not be found naked.

#### **John 17:24** [2]

24. Father, I desire that they also, whom you have given me, may be with me where I am, to see my glory that you have given me because you loved me before the foundation of the world.

#### **1 Corinthians 2:9** [2]

9. But, as it is written, "What no eye has seen, nor ear heard, nor the heart of man imagined, what God has prepared for those who love him" —

## Question 59

### But what does it help you now that you believe all this?

In Christ I am righteous before God and heir to life everlasting. [1]

#### **Habakkuk 2:4** [1]

4. "Behold, his soul is puffed up; it is not upright within him, but the righteous shall live by his faith.

#### **John 3:36** [1]

36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; whoever does not obey the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God remains on him.

#### **Romans 1:17** [1]

17. For in it the righteousness of God is revealed from faith for faith, as it is written, "The righteous shall live by faith."

#### **Romans 5:1-2** [1]

1. Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. 2. Through him we have also obtained access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and we rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Romans 3:21-28** [1]

21. But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it — 22. the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction: 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24. and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, 25. whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith. This was to show God's righteousness, because in his divine forbearance he had passed over former sins. 26. It was to show his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus. 27. Then what becomes of our boasting? It is excluded. By what kind of law? By a law of works? No, but by the law of faith. 28. For we hold that one is justified by faith apart from works of the law.

#### **Galatians 2:16** [1]

16. yet we know that a person is not justified by works of the law but through faith in Jesus Christ, so we also have believed in Christ Jesus, in order to be justified by faith in Christ and not by works of the law, because by works of the law no one will be justified.

#### **Ephesians 2:8, 9** [1]

8. For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, 9. not a result of works, so that no one may boast.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Philippians 3:8-11** [1]

8. Indeed, I count everything as loss because of the surpassing worth of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord. For his sake I have suffered the loss of all things and count them as rubbish, in order that I may gain Christ 9. and be found in him, not having a righteousness of my own that comes from the law, but that which comes through faith in Christ, the righteousness from God that depends on faith — 10. that I may know him and the power of his resurrection, and may share his sufferings, becoming like him in his death, 11. that by any means possible I may attain the resurrection from the dead.

#### **Romans 3:9-10** [2]

9. What then? Are we Jews any better off? No, not at all. For we have already charged that all, both Jews and Greeks, are under sin, 10. as it is written: "None is righteous, no, not one;

#### **Romans 7:23** [3]

23. but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members.

#### **Deuteronomy 9:6** [4]

6. "Know, therefore, that the LORD your God is not giving you this good land to possess because of your righteousness, for you are a stubborn people.

#### **Ezekiel 36:22** [4]

22. "Therefore say to the house of Israel, Thus says the Lord GOD: It is not for your sake, O house of Israel, that I am about to act, but for the sake of my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations to which you came.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Titus 3:4-5** [4]

4. But when the goodness and loving kindness of God our Savior appeared, 5. he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Romans 3:24** [5]

24. and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus,

#### **Ephesians 2:8** [5]

8. For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God,

#### **Romans 4:3-5** [6]

3. For what does the Scripture say? "Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness." 4. Now to the one who works, his wages are not counted as a gift but as his due. 5. And to the one who does not work but believes in him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is counted as righteousness,

#### **2 Corinthians 5:17-19** [6]

17. Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold, the new has come. 18. All this is from God, who through Christ reconciled us to himself and gave us the ministry of reconciliation; 19. that is, in Christ God was reconciling the world to himself, not counting their trespasses against them, and entrusting to us the message of reconciliation.



## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **1 John 2:1-2** [6]

1. My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. 2. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **Romans 4:24-25** [7]

24. but for ours also. It will be counted to us who believe in him who raised from the dead Jesus our Lord, 25. who was delivered up for our trespasses and raised for our justification.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [7]

21. For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **John 3:18** [8]

18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe is condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.

#### **Acts 16:30-31** [8]

30. Then he brought them out and said, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?" 31. And they said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household."

#### **Romans 3:22** [8]

22. the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction:

## Question 61

### Why do you say that you are righteous only by faith?

Not that I am acceptable to God on account of the worthiness of my faith, for only the satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ is my righteousness before God. [1]

I can receive this righteousness and make it mine my own by faith only. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:30-31** [1]

**30.** And because of him you are in Christ Jesus, who became to us wisdom from God, righteousness and sanctification and redemption, **31.** so that, as it is written, "Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord."

#### **1 Corinthians 2:2** [1]

**2.** For I decided to know nothing among you except Jesus Christ and him crucified.

#### **Romans 10:10** [2]

**10.** For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.

#### **1 John 5:10-12** [2]

**10.** Whoever believes in the Son of God has the testimony in himself. Whoever does not believe God has made him a liar, because he has not believed in the testimony that God has borne concerning his Son. **11.** And this is the testimony, that God gave us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. **12.** Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life.

## Question 62

# **But why can our good works not be our righteousness before God, or at least a part of it?**

Because the righteousness which can stand before God's judgment must be absolutely perfect and in complete agreement with the law of God, [1]

whereas even our best works in this life are all imperfect and defiled with sin. [2]

### **Deuteronomy 27:26** [1]

26. "Cursed be anyone who does not confirm the words of this law by doing them.' And all the people shall say, 'Amen.'

### **Galatians 3:10** [1]

10. For all who rely on works of the law are under a curse; for it is written, "Cursed be everyone who does not abide by all things written in the Book of the Law, and do them."

### **Isaiah 64:6** [2]

6. We have all become like one who is unclean, and all our righteous deeds are like a polluted garment. We all fade like a leaf, and our iniquities, like the wind, take us away.

### Question 63

## **But do our good works earn nothing, even though God promises to reward them in this life and the next?**

This reward is not earned [1] ; it is a gift of grace. [2]

### **Matthew 5:12** [1]

12. Rejoice and be glad, for your reward is great in heaven, for so they persecuted the prophets who were before you.

### **Hebrews 11:6** [1]

6. And without faith it is impossible to please him, for whoever would draw near to God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him.

### **Luke 17:10** [2]

10. So you also, when you have done all that you were commanded, say, 'We are unworthy servants; we have only done what was our duty.'"

### **2 Timothy 4:7-8** [2]

7. I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race, I have kept the faith. 8. Henceforth there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will award to me on that day, and not only to me but also to all who have loved his appearing.

## Question 64

### Does this teaching not make people careless and wicked?

No. It is impossible that those grafted into Christ by true faith should not bring forth fruits of thankfulness. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:18** [1]

18. A healthy tree cannot bear bad fruit, nor can a diseased tree bear good fruit.

#### **Luke 6:43-45** [1]

43. "For no good tree bears bad fruit, nor again does a bad tree bear good fruit, 44. for each tree is known by its own fruit. For figs are not gathered from thornbushes, nor are grapes picked from a bramble bush. 45. The good person out of the good treasure of his heart produces good, and the evil person out of his evil treasure produces evil, for out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

#### **John 15:5** [1]

5. I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing.

## Question 65

# Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?

From the Holy Spirit, [1] who works it in our hearts by the preaching of the gospel, [2] and strengthens it by the use of the sacraments. [3]

### **John 3:5** [1]

5. Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.

### **1 Corinthians 2:10-14** [1]

10. these things God has revealed to us through the Spirit. For the Spirit searches everything, even the depths of God. 11. For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of that person, which is in him? So also no one comprehends the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God. 12. Now we have received not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from God, that we might understand the things freely given us by God. 13. And we impart this in words not taught by human wisdom but taught by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual truths to those who are spiritual. 14. The natural person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are folly to him, and he is not able to understand them because they are spiritually discerned.

### **Ephesians 2:8** [1]

8. For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God,

### **Philippians 1:29** [1]

29. For it has been granted to you that for the sake of Christ you should not only believe in him but also suffer for his sake,

### **Romans 10:17** [2]

17. So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ.

### **1 Peter 1:23-25** [2]

23. since you have been born again, not of perishable seed but of imperishable, through the living and abiding word of God; 24. for "All flesh is like grass and all its glory like the flower of grass. The grass withers, and the flower falls, 25. but the word of the Lord remains forever." And this word is the good news that was preached to you.

### **Matthew 28:19-20** [3]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age."

### Question 65

**Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?**

From the Holy Spirit, [1] who works it in our hearts by the preaching of the gospel, [2] and strengthens it by the use of the sacraments. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 10:16** [3]

16. The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ?

## Question 66

### What are the sacraments?

The sacraments are holy, visible signs and seals. They were instituted by God so that by their use He might the more fully declare and seal to us the promise of the gospel. [1]

And this is the promise: that God graciously grants us forgiveness of sins and everlasting life because of the one sacrifice of Christ accomplished on the cross. [2]

#### **Genesis 17:11** [1]

11. You shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it shall be a sign of the covenant between me and you.

#### **Deuteronomy 30:6** [1]

6. And the LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your offspring, so that you will love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live.

#### **Romans 4:1** [1]

1. What then shall we say was gained by Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh?

#### **Matthew 26:27-28** [2]

27. And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, saying, "Drink of it, all of you, 28. for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

#### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

#### **Hebrews 10:10** [2]

10. And by that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.



### Question 67

## **Are both the Word and the sacraments then intended to focus our faith on the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross as the only ground of our salvation?**

Yes, indeed. The Holy Spirit teaches us in the gospel and assures us by the sacraments that our entire salvation rests on Christ's one sacrifice for us on the cross. [1]

### **Romans 6:3** [1]

3. Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [1]

26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **Galatians 3:27** [1]

27. For as many of you as were baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

### Question 68

## How many sacraments has Christ instituted in the new covenant?

Two: holy baptism and the holy supper. [1]

### **Matthew 28:19-20** [1]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age."

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-26** [1]

23. For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, 24. and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." 25. In the same way also he took the cup, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." 26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

## Question 69

# How does holy baptism signify and seal to you that the one sacrifice of Christ on the cross benefits you?

In this way: Christ instituted this outward washing [1]  
and with it gave the promise that, as surely as water washes away the dirt from the body, so certainly His blood and Spirit wash away the impurity of my soul, that is, all my sins. [2]

### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

### **Matthew 3:11** [2]

11. "I baptize you with water for repentance, but he who is coming after me is mightier than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire.

### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

### **John 1:33** [2]

33. I myself did not know him, but he who sent me to baptize with water said to me, 'He on whom you see the Spirit descend and remain, this is he who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.'

### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

### **Romans 6:3-4** [2]

3. Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were buried therefore with him by baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life.

### **1 Peter 3:21** [2]

21. Baptism, which corresponds to this, now saves you, not as a removal of dirt from the body but as an appeal to God for a good conscience, through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

## Question 70

### What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

To be washed with Christ's blood means to receive forgiveness of sins from God, through grace, because of Christ's blood, poured out for us in His sacrifice on the cross. [1]

To be washed with His Spirit means to be renewed by the Holy Spirit and sanctified to be members of Christ, so that more and more we become dead to sin and lead a holy and blameless life. [2]

#### **Ezekiel 36:25** [1]

25. I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you shall be clean from all your uncleanness, and from all your idols I will cleanse you.

#### **Zechariah 13:1** [1]

1. "On that day there shall be a fountain opened for the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, to cleanse them from sin and uncleanness.

#### **Ephesians 1:7** [1]

7. In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace,

#### **Hebrews 12:24** [1]

24. and to Jesus, the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel.

#### **1 Peter 1:2** [1]

2. according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, in the sanctification of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and for sprinkling with his blood: May grace and peace be multiplied to you.

#### **Revelation 1:5** [1]

5. and from Jesus Christ the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of kings on earth. To him who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood

#### **Revelation 7:14** [1]

14. I said to him, "Sir, you know." And he said to me, "These are the ones coming out of the great tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

## Question 70

### What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

To be washed with Christ's blood means to receive forgiveness of sins from God, through grace, because of Christ's blood, poured out for us in His sacrifice on the cross. [1]

To be washed with His Spirit means to be renewed by the Holy Spirit and sanctified to be members of Christ, so that more and more we become dead to sin and lead a holy and blameless life. [2]

#### **John 3:5-8** [2]

5. Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. 6. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. 7. Do not marvel that I said to you, 'You must be born again.' 8. The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it goes. So it is with everyone who is born of the Spirit."

#### **Romans 6:4** [2]

4. We were buried therefore with him by baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:11** [2]

11. And such were some of you. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

#### **Colossians 2:11-12** [2]

11. In him also you were circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, by putting off the body of the flesh, by the circumcision of Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the powerful working of God, who raised him from the dead.

### Question 71

## **Where has Christ promised that He will wash us with His blood and Spirit as surely as we are washed with the water of baptism?**

In the institution of baptism, where He says: Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. [1]

He who believes and is baptized will be saved, but he who does not believe will be condemned. [2]

This promise is repeated where Scripture calls baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins. [3]

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

#### **Titus 3:5** [3]

5. he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Acts 22:16** [3]

16. And now why do you wait? Rise and be baptized and wash away your sins, calling on his name.'

## Question 72

### Does this outward washing with water itself wash away sins?

No, only the blood of Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit cleanse us from all sins. [1]

#### **Matthew 3:11** [1]

11. "I baptize you with water for repentance, but he who is coming after me is mightier than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire.

#### **1 Peter 3:21** [1]

21. Baptism, which corresponds to this, now saves you, not as a removal of dirt from the body but as an appeal to God for a good conscience, through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

#### **1 John 1:7** [1]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin.

### Question 73

## Why then does the Holy Spirit call baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins?

God speaks in this way for a good reason. He wants to teach us that the blood and Spirit of Christ remove our sins just as water takes away dirt from the body. [1]

But, even more important, He wants to assure us by this divine pledge and sign that we are as truly cleansed from our sins spiritually as we are bodily washed with water. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:11** [1]

11. And such were some of you. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

#### **Revelation 1:5** [1]

5. and from Jesus Christ the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of kings on earth. To him who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood

#### **Revelation 7:14** [1]

14. I said to him, "Sir, you know." And he said to me, "These are the ones coming out of the great tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

#### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

#### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

#### **Romans 6:3-4** [2]

3. Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were buried therefore with him by baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life.

#### **Galatians 3:27** [2]

27. For as many of you as were baptized into Christ have put on Christ.



## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Genesis 17:7** [1]

7. And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you.

#### **Matthew 19:14** [1]

14. but Jesus said, "Let the little children come to me and do not hinder them, for to such belongs the kingdom of heaven."

#### **Psalms 22:11** [2]

11. Be not far from me, for trouble is near, and there is none to help.

#### **Isaiah 44:1-3** [2]

1. "But now hear, O Jacob my servant, Israel whom I have chosen!

2. Thus says the LORD who made you, who formed you from the womb and will help you: Fear not, O Jacob my servant, Jeshurun whom I have chosen. 3. For I will pour water on the thirsty land, and streams on the dry ground; I will pour my Spirit upon your offspring, and my blessing on your descendants.

#### **Acts 2:38-39** [2]

38. And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39. For the promise is for you and for your children and for all who are far off, everyone whom the Lord our God calls to himself."

#### **Acts 16:31** [2]

31. And they said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household."

## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Acts 10:47** [3]

47. "Can anyone withhold water for baptizing these people, who have received the Holy Spirit just as we have?"

#### **1 Corinthians 7:14** [3]

14. For the unbelieving husband is made holy because of his wife, and the unbelieving wife is made holy because of her husband. Otherwise your children would be unclean, but as it is, they are holy.

#### **Genesis 17:9-14** [4]

9. And God said to Abraham, "As for you, you shall keep my covenant, you and your offspring after you throughout their generations. 10. This is my covenant, which you shall keep, between me and you and your offspring after you: Every male among you shall be circumcised. 11. You shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it shall be a sign of the covenant between me and you. 12. He who is eight days old among you shall be circumcised. Every male throughout your generations, whether born in your house or bought with your money from any foreigner who is not of your offspring, 13. both he who is born in your house and he who is bought with your money, shall surely be circumcised. So shall my covenant be in your flesh an everlasting covenant. 14. Any uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin shall be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant."

## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Colossians 2:11-13** [5]

11. In him also you were circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, by putting off the body of the flesh, by the circumcision of Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the powerful working of God, who raised him from the dead. 13. And you, who were dead in your trespasses and the uncircumcision of your flesh, God made alive together with him, having forgiven us all our trespasses,

## Question 75

# How does the Lord's Supper signify and seal to you that you share in Christ's one sacrifice on the cross and in all His gifts?

In this way: Christ has commanded me and all believers to eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup in remembrance of Him. With this command He gave these promises: [1]

First, as surely as I see with my eyes the bread of the Lord broken for me and the cup given to me, so surely was His body offered for me and His blood poured out for me on the cross. Second, as surely as I receive from the hand of the minister and taste with my mouth the bread and the cup of the Lord as sure signs of Christ's body and blood, so surely does He Himself nourish and refresh my soul to everlasting life with His crucified body and shed blood. [2]

### **Matthew 26:26-28** [1]

**26.** Now as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, "Take, eat; this is my body." **27.** And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, saying, "Drink of it, all of you, **28.** for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

### **Mark 14:22-24** [1]

**22.** And as they were eating, he took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to them, and said, "Take; this is my body." **23.** And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, and they all drank of it. **24.** And he said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many.

### **Luke 22:19-20** [1]

**19.** And he took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and gave it to them, saying, "This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me." **20.** And likewise the cup after they had eaten, saying, "This cup that is poured out for you is the new covenant in my blood.

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-25** [1]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." **25.** In the same way also he took the cup, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me."

## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **John 6:35** [1]

**35.** Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; whoever comes to me shall not hunger, and whoever believes in me shall never thirst.

#### **John 6:40** [1]

**40.** For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and believes in him should have eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day."

#### **John 6:50-54** [1]

**50.** This is the bread that comes down from heaven, so that one may eat of it and not die. **51.** I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. And the bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh." **52.** The Jews then disputed among themselves, saying, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?" **53.** So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. **54.** Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day.

#### **John 6:55-56** [2]

**55.** For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink. **56.** Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood abides in me, and I in him.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:13** [2]

**13.** For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body – Jews or Greeks, slaves or free – and all were made to drink of one Spirit.

#### **Acts 1:9-11** [3]

**9.** And when he had said these things, as they were looking on, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight. **10.** And while they were gazing into heaven as he went, behold, two men stood by them in white robes, **11.** and said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven."

## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **Acts 3:21** [3]

21. whom heaven must receive until the time for restoring all the things about which God spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets long ago.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [3]

26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

#### **Colossians 3:1** [3]

1. If then you have been raised with Christ, seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:15-17** [4]

15. Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ? Shall I then take the members of Christ and make them members of a prostitute? Never! 16. Or do you not know that he who is joined to a prostitute becomes one body with her? For, as it is written, "The two will become one flesh." 17. But he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him.

#### **Ephesians 5:29-30** [4]

29. For no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourishes and cherishes it, just as Christ does the church, 30. because we are members of his body.

#### **1 John 4:13** [4]

13. By this we know that we abide in him and he in us, because he has given us of his Spirit.

#### **John 6:56-58** [5]

56. Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood abides in me, and I in him. 57. As the living Father sent me, and I live because of the Father, so whoever feeds on me, he also will live because of me. 58. This is the bread that came down from heaven, not like the bread the fathers ate, and died. Whoever feeds on this bread will live forever."

## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **John 15:1-6** [5]

1. "I am the true vine, and my Father is the vinedresser. 2. Every branch in me that does not bear fruit he takes away, and every branch that does bear fruit he prunes, that it may bear more fruit. 3. Already you are clean because of the word that I have spoken to you. 4. Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit by itself, unless it abides in the vine, neither can you, unless you abide in me. 5. I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing. 6. If anyone does not abide in me he is thrown away like a branch and withers; and the branches are gathered, thrown into the fire, and burned.

#### **Ephesians 4:15-16** [5]

15. Rather, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in every way into him who is the head, into Christ, 16. from whom the whole body, joined and held together by every joint with which it is equipped, when each part is working properly, makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love.

#### **1 John 3:24** [5]

24. Whoever keeps his commandments abides in God, and God in him. And by this we know that he abides in us, by the Spirit whom he has given us.

### Question 77

## **Where has Christ promised that He will nourish and refresh believers with His body and blood as surely as they eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup?**

In the institution of the Lord's supper: The Lord Jesus on the night when He was betrayed took bread, and when He had given thanks, He broke it and said, "This is my body which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." In the same way also the cup, after supper, saying, "Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes. [1]

This promise is repeated by Paul where he says: The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread. [2]

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-26** [1]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." **25.** In the same way also he took the cup, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." **26.** For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [2]

**16.** The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? **17.** Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread.



## Question 78

### Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?

No. Just as the water of baptism is not changed into the blood of Christ and is not the washing away of sins itself but is simply God's sign and pledge, [1]

so also the bread in the Lord's supper does not become the body of Christ itself, [2] although it is called Christ's body [3] in keeping with the nature and usage of sacraments. [4]

#### **Ephesians 5:26** [1]

26. that he might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word,

#### **Titus 3:5** [1]

5. he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Matthew 26:26-29** [2]

26. Now as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, "Take, eat; this is my body." 27. And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, saying, "Drink of it, all of you, 28. for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins. 29. I tell you I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom."

#### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [3]

16. The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26-28** [3]

26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. 27. Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty concerning the body and blood of the Lord. 28. Let a person examine himself, then, and so eat of the bread and drink of the cup.

#### **Genesis 17:10-11** [4]

10. This is my covenant, which you shall keep, between me and you and your offspring after you: Every male among you shall be circumcised. 11. You shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it shall be a sign of the covenant between me and you.

## Question 78

### **Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?**

No. Just as the water of baptism is not changed into the blood of Christ and is not the washing away of sins itself but is simply God's sign and pledge, [1]

so also the bread in the Lord's supper does not become the body of Christ itself, [2] although it is called Christ's body [3] in keeping with the nature and usage of sacraments. [4]

#### **Exodus 12:11** [4]

11. In this manner you shall eat it: with your belt fastened, your sandals on your feet, and your staff in your hand. And you shall eat it in haste. It is the LORD's Passover.

#### **Exodus 12:13** [4]

13. The blood shall be a sign for you, on the houses where you are. And when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and no plague will befall you to destroy you, when I strike the land of Egypt.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:3-4** [4]

3. and all ate the same spiritual food, 4. and all drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank from the spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ.

#### **1 Peter 3:21** [4]

21. Baptism, which corresponds to this, now saves you, not as a removal of dirt from the body but as an appeal to God for a good conscience, through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

## Question 79

# **Why then does Christ call the bread His body and the cup His blood, or the new covenant in His blood, and why does Paul speak of a participation in the body and blood of Christ?**

Christ speaks in this way for a good reason: He wants to teach us by His supper that as bread and wine sustain us in this temporal life, so His crucified body and shed blood are true food and drink for our souls to eternal life. [1]

But, even more important, He wants to assure us by this visible sign and pledge, first, that through the working of the Holy Spirit we share in His true body and blood as surely as we receive with our mouth these holy signs in remembrance of Him, [2]

and, second, that all His suffering and obedience are as certainly ours as if we personally had suffered and paid for our sins. [3]

### **John 6:51** [1]

51. I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. And the bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh."

### **John 6:55** [1]

55. For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink.

### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [2]

16. The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread.

### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [2]

26. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **Romans 6:5-11** [3]

5. For if we have been united with him in a death like his, we shall certainly be united with him in a resurrection like his. 6. We know that our old self was crucified with him in order that the body of sin might be brought to nothing, so that we would no longer be enslaved to sin. 7. For one who has died has been set free from sin. 8. Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. We know that Christ, being raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has dominion over him. 10. For the death he died he died to sin, once for all, but the life he lives he lives to God. 11. So you also must consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.

## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped. Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **Matthew 26:28** [1]

28. for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

#### **John 19:30** [1]

30. When Jesus had received the sour wine, he said, "It is finished," and he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.

#### **Hebrews 7:27** [1]

27. He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices daily, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself.

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [1]

12. he entered once for all into the holy places, not by means of the blood of goats and calves but by means of his own blood, thus securing an eternal redemption.

#### **Hebrews 9:25-26** [1]

25. Nor was it to offer himself repeatedly, as the high priest enters the holy places every year with blood not his own, 26. for then he would have had to suffer repeatedly since the foundation of the world. But as it is, he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped. Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### Hebrews 10:10-18 [1]

10. And by that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. 11. And every priest stands daily at his service, offering repeatedly the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. 12. But when Christ had offered for all time a single sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God, 13. waiting from that time until his enemies should be made a footstool for his feet. 14. For by a single offering he has perfected for all time those who are being sanctified. 15. And the Holy Spirit also bears witness to us; for after saying, 16. "This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, declares the Lord: I will put my laws on their hearts, and write them on their minds," 17. then he adds, "I will remember their sins and their lawless deeds no more." 18. Where there is forgiveness of these, there is no longer any offering for sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:17 [2]

17. But he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:16-17 [2]

16. The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread.

#### John 20:17 [3]

17. Jesus said to her, "Do not cling to me, for I have not yet ascended to the Father; but go to my brothers and say to them, 'I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'"

#### Acts 7:55-56 [3]

55. But he, full of the Holy Spirit, gazed into heaven and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God. 56. And he said, "Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."

## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped. Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **Hebrews 1:3** [3]

3. He is the radiance of the glory of God and the exact imprint of his nature, and he upholds the universe by the word of his power. After making purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

#### **Hebrews 8:1** [3]

1. Now the point in what we are saying is this: we have such a high priest, one who is seated at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven,

#### **John 4:21-24** [4]

21. Jesus said to her, "Woman, believe me, the hour is coming when neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem will you worship the Father. 22. You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews. 23. But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. 24. God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

#### **Philippians 3:20** [4]

20. But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we await a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ,

#### **Colossians 3:1** [4]

1. If then you have been raised with Christ, seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God.

## Question 80

### **What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?**

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped.

Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **1 Thessalonians 1:10** [4]

10. and to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, Jesus who delivers us from the wrath to come.

## Question 81

### Who are to come to the table of the Lord?

Those who are truly displeased with themselves because of their sins and yet trust that these are forgiven them and that their remaining weakness is covered by the suffering and death of Christ, and who also desire more and more to strengthen their faith and amend their life. But hypocrites and those who do not repent eat and drink judgment upon themselves. [1]

#### **1 Corinthians 10:19-22** [1]

**19.** What do I imply then? That food offered to idols is anything, or that an idol is anything? **20.** No, I imply that what pagans sacrifice they offer to demons and not to God. I do not want you to be participants with demons. **21.** You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons. You cannot partake of the table of the Lord and the table of demons. **22.** Shall we provoke the Lord to jealousy? Are we stronger than he?

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26-32** [1]

**26.** For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. **27.** Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty concerning the body and blood of the Lord. **28.** Let a person examine himself, then, and so eat of the bread and drink of the cup. **29.** For anyone who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment on himself. **30.** That is why many of you are weak and ill, and some have died. **31.** But if we judged ourselves truly, we would not be judged. **32.** But when we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined so that we may not be condemned along with the world.



## Question 82

### **Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?**

No, for then the covenant of God would be profaned and His wrath kindled against the whole congregation. [1]

Therefore, according to the command of Christ and His apostles, the Christian church is duty-bound to exclude such persons by the keys of the kingdom of heaven, until they amend their lives. [2]

#### **Psalms 50:16** [1]

**16.** But to the wicked God says: "What right have you to recite my statutes or take my covenant on your lips?"

#### **Isaiah 1:11-17** [1]

**11.** "What to me is the multitude of your sacrifices? says the LORD; I have had enough of burnt offerings of rams and the fat of well-fed beasts; I do not delight in the blood of bulls, or of lambs, or of goats. **12.** "When you come to appear before me, who has required of you this trampling of my courts? **13.** Bring no more vain offerings; incense is an abomination to me. New moon and Sabbath and the calling of convocations — I cannot endure iniquity and solemn assembly. **14.** Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hates; they have become a burden to me; I am weary of bearing them. **15.** When you spread out your hands, I will hide my eyes from you; even though you make many prayers, I will not listen; your hands are full of blood. **16.** Wash yourselves; make yourselves clean; remove the evil of your deeds from before my eyes; cease to do evil, **17.** learn to do good; seek justice, correct oppression; bring justice to the fatherless, plead the widow's cause.

## Question 82

**Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?**

No, for then the covenant of God would be profaned and His wrath kindled against the whole congregation. [1]

Therefore, according to the command of Christ and His apostles, the Christian church is duty-bound to exclude such persons by the keys of the kingdom of heaven, until they amend their lives. [2]

**1 Corinthians 11:17-34** [1]

### Question 83

## What are the keys of the kingdom of heaven?

The preaching of the holy gospel and church discipline. By these two the kingdom of heaven is opened to believers and closed to unbelievers.  
[1]

### **Matthew 16:19** [1]

19. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

### **John 20:21-23** [1]

21. Jesus said to them again, "Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, even so I am sending you." 22. And when he had said this, he breathed on them and said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23. If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you withhold forgiveness from any, it is withheld."

## Question 84

### How is the kingdom of heaven opened and closed by the preaching of the gospel?

According to the command of Christ, the kingdom of heaven is opened when it is proclaimed and publicly testified to each and every believer that God has really forgiven all their sins for the sake of Christ's merits, as often as they by true faith accept the promise of the gospel. The kingdom of heaven is closed when it is proclaimed and testified to all unbelievers and hypocrites that the wrath of God and eternal condemnation rest on them as long as they do not repent. According to this testimony of the gospel, God will judge both in this life and in the life to come. [1]

#### **Matthew 16:19** [1]

19. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

#### **John 3:31-36** [1]

31. He who comes from above is above all. He who is of the earth belongs to the earth and speaks in an earthly way. He who comes from heaven is above all. 32. He bears witness to what he has seen and heard, yet no one receives his testimony. 33. Whoever receives his testimony sets his seal to this, that God is true. 34. For he whom God has sent utters the words of God, for he gives the Spirit without measure. 35. The Father loves the Son and has given all things into his hand. 36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; whoever does not obey the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God remains on him.

#### **John 20:21-23** [1]

21. Jesus said to them again, "Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, even so I am sending you." 22. And when he had said this, he breathed on them and said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23. If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you withhold forgiveness from any, it is withheld."

## Question 85

### How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

According to the command of Christ, people who call themselves Christians but show themselves to be unchristian in doctrine or life are first repeatedly admonished in a brotherly manner. If they do not give up their errors or wickedness, they are reported to the church, that is, to the elders. If they do not heed also their admonitions, they are forbidden the use of the sacraments, and they are excluded by the elders from the Christian congregation, and by God Himself from the kingdom of Christ. [1]

They are again received as members of Christ and of the church when they promise and show real amendment. [2]

#### **Matthew 18:15-20** [1]

15. "If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. 16. But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. 17. If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector. 18. Truly, I say to you, whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven. 19. Again I say to you, if two of you agree on earth about anything they ask, it will be done for them by my Father in heaven. 20. For where two or three are gathered in my name, there am I among them."

#### **1 Corinthians 5:3-5** [1]

3. For though absent in body, I am present in spirit; and as if present, I have already pronounced judgment on the one who did such a thing. 4. When you are assembled in the name of the Lord Jesus and my spirit is present, with the power of our Lord Jesus, 5. you are to deliver this man to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, so that his spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:11-13** [1]

11. Whether then it was I or they, so we preach and so you believed. 12. Now if Christ is proclaimed as raised from the dead, how can some of you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? 13. But if there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised.

#### **2 Thessalonians 3:14-15** [1]

14. If anyone does not obey what we say in this letter, take note of that person, and have nothing to do with him, that he may be ashamed. 15. Do not regard him as an enemy, but warn him as a brother.

## Question 85

### How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

According to the command of Christ, people who call themselves Christians but show themselves to be unchristian in doctrine or life are first repeatedly admonished in a brotherly manner. If they do not give up their errors or wickedness, they are reported to the church, that is, to the elders. If they do not heed also their admonitions, they are forbidden the use of the sacraments, and they are excluded by the elders from the Christian congregation, and by God Himself from the kingdom of Christ. [1]

They are again received as members of Christ and of the church when they promise and show real amendment. [2]

#### **Luke 15:20-24** [2]

**20.** And he arose and came to his father. But while he was still a long way off, his father saw him and felt compassion, and ran and embraced him and kissed him. **21.** And the son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and before you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.' **22.** But the father said to his servants, 'Bring quickly the best robe, and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet. **23.** And bring the fattened calf and kill it, and let us eat and celebrate. **24.** For this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found.' And they began to celebrate.

#### **2 Corinthians 2:6-11** [2]

**6.** For such a one, this punishment by the majority is enough, **7.** so you should rather turn to forgive and comfort him, or he may be overwhelmed by excessive sorrow. **8.** So I beg you to reaffirm your love for him. **9.** For this is why I wrote, that I might test you and know whether you are obedient in everything. **10.** Anyone whom you forgive, I also forgive. Indeed, what I have forgiven, if I have forgiven anything, has been for your sake in the presence of Christ, **11.** so that we would not be outwitted by Satan; for we are not ignorant of his designs.

## Question 86

# **Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?**

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Romans 6:13** [1]

**13.** Do not present your members to sin as instruments for unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life, and your members to God as instruments for righteousness.

### **Romans 12:1-2** [1]

**1.** I appeal to you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and acceptable to God, which is your spiritual worship. **2.** Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that by testing you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and acceptable and perfect.

### **1 Peter 2:5-10** [1]

**5.** you yourselves like living stones are being built up as a spiritual house, to be a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. **6.** For it stands in Scripture: "Behold, I am laying in Zion a stone, a cornerstone chosen and precious, and whoever believes in him will not be put to shame." **7.** So the honor is for you who believe, but for those who do not believe, "The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone," **8.** and "A stone of stumbling, and a rock of offense." They stumble because they disobey the word, as they were destined to do. **9.** But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light. **10.** Once you were not a people, but now you are God's people; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.

## Question 86

# Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Matthew 5:16** [2]

**16.** In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father who is in heaven.

### **1 Corinthians 6:19-20** [2]

**19.** Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own, **20.** for you were bought with a price. So glorify God in your body.

### **Matthew 7:17-18** [3]

**17.** So, every healthy tree bears good fruit, but the diseased tree bears bad fruit. **18.** A healthy tree cannot bear bad fruit, nor can a diseased tree bear good fruit.

### **Galatians 5:22-24** [3]

**22.** But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, **23.** gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. **24.** And those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

### **2 Peter 1:10-11** [3]

**10.** Therefore, brothers, be all the more diligent to confirm your calling and election, for if you practice these qualities you will never fall. **11.** For in this way there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.



## Question 86

# **Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?**

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Matthew 5:14-16** [4]

14. "You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. 15. Nor do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but on a stand, and it gives light to all in the house. 16. In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father who is in heaven.

### **Romans 14:17-19** [4]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking but of righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit. 18. Whoever thus serves Christ is acceptable to God and approved by men. 19. So then let us pursue what makes for peace and for mutual upbuilding.

### **1 Peter 2:12** [4]

12. Keep your conduct among the Gentiles honorable, so that when they speak against you as evildoers, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day of visitation.

### **1 Peter 3:1-2** [4]

1. Likewise, wives, be subject to your own husbands, so that even if some do not obey the word, they may be won without a word by the conduct of their wives, 2. when they see your respectful and pure conduct.

## Question 87

# Can those be saved who do not turn to God from their ungrateful and impenitent walk of life?

By no means. Scripture says that no unchaste person, idolater, adulterer, thief, greedy person, drunkard, slanderer, robber, or the like shall inherit the kingdom of God. [1]

### **1 Corinthians 6:9-10** [1]

9. Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who practice homosexuality, 10. nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

### **Galatians 5:19-21** [1]

19. Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, 20. idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, rivalries, dissensions, divisions, 21. envy, drunkenness, orgies, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who do such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.

### **Ephesians 5:5-6** [1]

5. For you may be sure of this, that everyone who is sexually immoral or impure, or who is covetous (that is, an idolater), has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God. 6. Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God comes upon the sons of disobedience.

### **1 John 3:14** [1]

14. We know that we have passed out of death into life, because we love the brothers. Whoever does not love abides in death.

## Question 88

# What is the true repentance or conversion of man?

It is the dying of the old nature and the coming to life of the new. [1]

### **Romans 6:1-11** [1]

1. What shall we say then? Are we to continue in sin that grace may abound? 2. By no means! How can we who died to sin still live in it? 3. Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were buried therefore with him by baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life. 5. For if we have been united with him in a death like his, we shall certainly be united with him in a resurrection like his. 6. We know that our old self was crucified with him in order that the body of sin might be brought to nothing, so that we would no longer be enslaved to sin. 7. For one who has died has been set free from sin. 8. Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. We know that Christ, being raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has dominion over him. 10. For the death he died he died to sin, once for all, but the life he lives he lives to God. 11. So you also must consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.

### **1 Corinthians 5:7** [1]

7. Cleanse out the old leaven that you may be a new lump, as you really are unleavened. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.

### **2 Corinthians 5:17** [1]

17. Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold, the new has come.

### **Ephesians 4:22-24** [1]

22. to put off your old self, which belongs to your former manner of life and is corrupt through deceitful desires, 23. and to be renewed in the spirit of your minds, 24. and to put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness.

### **Colossians 3:5-10** [1]

5. Put to death therefore what is earthly in you: sexual immorality, impurity, passion, evil desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry. 6. On account of these the wrath of God is coming. 7. In these you too once walked, when you were living in them. 8. But now you must put them all away: anger, wrath, malice, slander, and obscene talk from your mouth. 9. Do not lie to one another, seeing that you have put off the old self with its practices 10. and have put on the new self, which is being renewed in knowledge after the image of its creator.

## Question 89

### What is the dying of the old nature?

It is to grieve with heartfelt sorrow that we have offended God by our sin, and more and more to hate it and flee from it. [1]

#### **Psalm 51:3-4** [1]

**3.** For I know my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. **4.** Against you, you only, have I sinned and done what is evil in your sight, so that you may be justified in your words and blameless in your judgment.

#### **Psalm 51:17** [1]

**17.** The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit; a broken and contrite heart, O God, you will not despise.

#### **Joel 2:12-13** [1]

**12.** "Yet even now," declares the LORD, "return to me with all your heart, with fasting, with weeping, and with mourning; **13.** and rend your hearts and not your garments." Return to the LORD your God, for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love; and he relents over disaster.

#### **Romans 8:12-13** [1]

**12.** So then, brothers, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live according to the flesh. **13.** For if you live according to the flesh you will die, but if by the Spirit you put to death the deeds of the body, you will live.

#### **2 Corinthians 7:10** [1]

**10.** For godly grief produces a repentance that leads to salvation without regret, whereas worldly grief produces death.

## Question 90

### What is the coming to life of the new nature?

It is a heartfelt joy in God through Christ, [1] and a love and delight to live according to the will of God in all good works. [2]

#### **Psalm 51:8** [1]

8. Let me hear joy and gladness; let the bones that you have broken rejoice.

#### **Psalm 51:12** [1]

12. Restore to me the joy of your salvation, and uphold me with a willing spirit.

#### **Isaiah 57:15** [1]

15. For thus says the One who is high and lifted up, who inhabits eternity, whose name is Holy: "I dwell in the high and holy place, and also with him who is of a contrite and lowly spirit, to revive the spirit of the lowly, and to revive the heart of the contrite.

#### **Romans 5:1** [1]

1. Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.

#### **Romans 14:17** [1]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking but of righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.

#### **Romans 6:10-11** [2]

10. For the death he died he died to sin, once for all, but the life he lives he lives to God. 11. So you also must consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.

#### **Galatians 2:20** [2]

20. I have been crucified with Christ. It is no longer I who live, but Christ who lives in me. And the life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.

## Question 91

### But what are good works?

Only those which are done out of true faith, [1] in accordance with the law of God, [2] and to His glory, [3] and not those based on our own opinion or on precepts of men. [4]

#### **John 15:5** [1]

5. I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing.

#### **Romans 14:23** [1]

23. But whoever has doubts is condemned if he eats, because the eating is not from faith. For whatever does not proceed from faith is sin.

#### **Hebrews 11:6** [1]

6. And without faith it is impossible to please him, for whoever would draw near to God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him.

#### **Leviticus 18:4** [2]

4. You shall follow my rules and keep my statutes and walk in them. I am the LORD your God.

#### **1 Samuel 15:22** [2]

22. And Samuel said, "Has the LORD as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the LORD? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to listen than the fat of rams.

#### **Ephesians 2:10** [2]

10. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared beforehand, that we should walk in them.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:31** [3]

31. So, whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, do all to the glory of God.

#### **Deuteronomy 12:32** [4]

32. "Everything that I command you, you shall be careful to do. You shall not add to it or take from it.

#### **Isaiah 29:13** [4]

13. And the Lord said: "Because this people draw near with their mouth and honor me with their lips, while their hearts are far from me, and their fear of me is a commandment taught by men,

## Question 91

### But what are good works?

Only those which are done out of true faith, [1] in accordance with the law of God, [2] and to His glory, [3] and not those based on our own opinion or on precepts of men. [4]

#### **Ezekiel 20:18-19** [4]

18. "And I said to their children in the wilderness, 'Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers, nor keep their rules, nor defile yourselves with their idols. 19. I am the LORD your God; walk in my statutes, and be careful to obey my rules,

#### **Matthew 15:7-9** [4]

7. You hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy of you, when he said:  
8. "This people honors me with their lips, but their heart is far from me; 9. in vain do they worship me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men."

## Question 92

### What is the law of the LORD?

God spoke all these words, saying: I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. 1. You shall have no other gods before Me. 2. You shall not make for yourself a graven image, 2. or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, 2. or that is in the earth beneath, 2. or that is in the water under the earth; 2. you shall not bow down to them or serve them; 2. for I the LORD your God am a jealous God, 2. visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children 2. to the third and fourth generation 2. of those who hate Me, 2. but showing steadfast love to thousands of those 2. who love Me and keep My commandments. 3. You shall not take the Name of the LORD your God 3. in vain; 3. for the LORD will not hold him guiltless 3. who takes His Name in vain. 4. Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. 4. Six days you shall labour, and do all your work; 4. but the seventh day is a sabbath to the LORD your 4. God; 4. in it you shall not do any work, 4. you, or your son, or your daughter, 4. your manservant, or your maidservant, 4. or your cattle, 4. or the sojourner who is within your gates; 4. for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, 4. the sea, and all that is in them, 4. and rested the seventh day; 4. therefore the LORD blessed the sabbath day 4. and hallowed it. 5. Honour your father and your mother, 5. that your days may be long 5. in the land which the LORD your God gives you. 6. You shall not kill. 7. You shall not commit adultery. 8. You shall not steal. 9. You shall not bear false witness against your neighbour. 10. you shall not covet your neighbour's house; 10. you shall not covet your neighbour's wife, 10. or his manservant, or his maidservant, 10. or his ox, or his ass, 10. or anything that is your neighbour's. [1]

**Exodus 20:1-17** [1]

**Deuteronomy 5:6-21** [1]



### Question 93

## How are these commandments divided?

Into two parts. The first teaches us how to live in relation to God; the second, what duties we owe our neighbour. [1]

### **Matthew 22:37-40** [1]

**37.** And he said to him, "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind. **38.** This is the great and first commandment. **39.** And a second is like it: You shall love your neighbor as yourself. **40.** On these two commandments depend all the Law and the Prophets."

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:9-10** [1]

9. Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who practice homosexuality, 10. nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:5-14** [1]

5. Nevertheless, with most of them God was not pleased, for they were overthrown in the wilderness. 6. Now these things took place as examples for us, that we might not desire evil as they did. 7. Do not be idolaters as some of them were; as it is written, "The people sat down to eat and drink and rose up to play." 8. We must not indulge in sexual immorality as some of them did, and twenty-three thousand fell in a single day. 9. We must not put Christ to the test, as some of them did and were destroyed by serpents, 10. nor grumble, as some of them did and were destroyed by the Destroyer. 11. Now these things happened to them as an example, but they were written down for our instruction, on whom the end of the ages has come. 12. Therefore let anyone who thinks that he stands take heed lest he fall. 13. No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to man. God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond your ability, but with the temptation he will also provide the way of escape, that you may be able to endure it. 14. Therefore, my beloved, flee from idolatry.

**1 John 5:21** [1] 21. Little children, keep yourselves from idols.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Leviticus 19:31** [2]

31. "Do not turn to mediums or necromancers; do not seek them out, and so make yourselves unclean by them: I am the LORD your God.

#### **Deuteronomy 18:9-12** [2]

9. "When you come into the land that the LORD your God is giving you, you shall not learn to follow the abominable practices of those nations. 10. There shall not be found among you anyone who burns his son or his daughter as an offering, anyone who practices divination or tells fortunes or interprets omens, or a sorcerer 11. or a charmer or a medium or a necromancer or one who inquires of the dead, 12. for whoever does these things is an abomination to the LORD. And because of these abominations the LORD your God is driving them out before you.

#### **Matthew 4:10** [3]

10. Then Jesus said to him, "Be gone, Satan! For it is written, "'You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.'"

#### **Revelation 19:10** [3]

10. Then I fell down at his feet to worship him, but he said to me, "You must not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God." For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

#### **Revelation 22:8-9** [3]

8. I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I heard and saw them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who showed them to me, 9. but he said to me, "You must not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers the prophets, and with those who keep the words of this book. Worship God."

#### **John 17:3** [4]

3. And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

#### **Jeremiah 17:5** [5]

5. Thus says the LORD: "Cursed is the man who trusts in man and makes flesh his strength, whose heart turns away from the LORD.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Jeremiah 17:7** [5]

7. "Blessed is the man who trusts in the LORD, whose trust is the LORD.

#### **1 Peter 5:5-6** [6]

5. Likewise, you who are younger, be subject to the elders. Clothe yourselves, all of you, with humility toward one another, for "God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble." 6. Humble yourselves, therefore, under the mighty hand of God so that at the proper time he may exalt you,

#### **Romans 5:3-4** [7]

3. Not only that, but we rejoice in our sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance, 4. and endurance produces character, and character produces hope,

#### **1 Corinthians 10:10** [7]

10. nor grumble, as some of them did and were destroyed by the Destroyer.

#### **Philippians 2:14** [7]

14. Do all things without grumbling or disputing,

#### **Colossians 1:11** [7]

11. being strengthened with all power, according to his glorious might, for all endurance and patience with joy;

#### **Hebrews 10:36** [7]

36. For you have need of endurance, so that when you have done the will of God you may receive what is promised.

#### **Psalms 104:27-28** [8]

27. These all look to you, to give them their food in due season. 28. When you give it to them, they gather it up; when you open your hand, they are filled with good things.

#### **Isaiah 45:7** [8]

7. I form light and create darkness; I make well-being and create calamity; I am the LORD, who does all these things.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **James 1:17** [8]

17. Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation or shadow due to change.

#### **Deuteronomy 6:5** [9]

5. You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might.

#### **Matthew 22:37** [9]

37. And he said to him, "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.

#### **Deuteronomy 6:2** [10]

2. that you may fear the LORD your God, you and your son and your son's son, by keeping all his statutes and his commandments, which I command you, all the days of your life, and that your days may be long.

#### **Psalms 111:10** [10]

10. The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom; all those who practice it have a good understanding. His praise endures forever!

#### **Proverbs 1:7** [10]

7. The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge; fools despise wisdom and instruction.

#### **Proverbs 9:10** [10]

10. The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom, and the knowledge of the Holy One is insight.

#### **Matthew 10:28** [10]

28. And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. Rather fear him who can destroy both soul and body in hell.

#### **1 Peter 1:17** [10]

17. And if you call on him as Father who judges impartially according to each one's deeds, conduct yourselves with fear throughout the time of your exile,

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Deuteronomy 6:13** [11]

13. It is the LORD your God you shall fear. Him you shall serve and by his name you shall swear.

#### **Matthew 4:10** [11]

10. Then Jesus said to him, "Be gone, Satan! For it is written, ""You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.""

#### **Deuteronomy 10:20** [11]

20. You shall fear the LORD your God. You shall serve him and hold fast to him, and by his name you shall swear.

#### **Matthew 5:29-30** [12]

29. If your right eye causes you to sin, tear it out and throw it away. For it is better that you lose one of your members than that your whole body be thrown into hell. 30. And if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away. For it is better that you lose one of your members than that your whole body go into hell.

#### **Matthew 10:37-39** [12]

37. Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. 38. And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not worthy of me. 39. Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it.

#### **Acts 5:29** [12]

29. But Peter and the apostles answered, "We must obey God rather than men.

## Question 95

# What is idolatry?

Idolatry is having or inventing something in which to put our trust instead of, or in addition to, the only true God who has revealed Himself in His Word. [1]

### **1 Chronicles 16:26** [1]

26. For all the gods of the peoples are worthless idols, but the LORD made the heavens.

### **Galatians 4:8-9** [1]

8. Formerly, when you did not know God, you were enslaved to those that by nature are not gods. 9. But now that you have come to know God, or rather to be known by God, how can you turn back again to the weak and worthless elementary principles of the world, whose slaves you want to be once more?

### **Ephesians 5:5** [1]

5. For you may be sure of this, that everyone who is sexually immoral or impure, or who is covetous (that is, an idolater), has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God.

### **Philippians 3:19** [1]

19. Their end is destruction, their god is their belly, and they glory in their shame, with minds set on earthly things.

## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 4:15-19** [1]

**15.** "Therefore watch yourselves very carefully. Since you saw no form on the day that the LORD spoke to you at Horeb out of the midst of the fire, **16.** beware lest you act corruptly by making a carved image for yourselves, in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female, **17.** the likeness of any animal that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flies in the air, **18.** the likeness of anything that creeps on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water under the earth. **19.** And beware lest you raise your eyes to heaven, and when you see the sun and the moon and the stars, all the host of heaven, you be drawn away and bow down to them and serve them, things that the LORD your God has allotted to all the peoples under the whole heaven.

#### **Isaiah 40:18-25** [1]

**18.** To whom then will you liken God, or what likeness compare with him? **19.** An idol! A craftsman casts it, and a goldsmith overlays it with gold and casts for it silver chains. **20.** He who is too impoverished for an offering chooses wood that will not rot; he seeks out a skillful craftsman to set up an idol that will not move. **21.** Do you not know? Do you not hear? Has it not been told you from the beginning? Have you not understood from the foundations of the earth? **22.** It is he who sits above the circle of the earth, and its inhabitants are like grasshoppers; who stretches out the heavens like a curtain, and spreads them like a tent to dwell in; **23.** who brings princes to nothing, and makes the rulers of the earth as emptiness. **24.** Scarcely are they planted, scarcely sown, scarcely has their stem taken root in the earth, when he blows on them, and they wither, and the tempest carries them off like stubble. **25.** To whom then will you compare me, that I should be like him? says the Holy One.

#### **Acts 17:29** [1]

**29.** Being then God's offspring, we ought not to think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone, an image formed by the art and imagination of man.



## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Romans 1:23** [1]

**23.** and exchanged the glory of the immortal God for images resembling mortal man and birds and animals and creeping things.

#### **Leviticus 10:1-7** [2]

**1.** Now Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, each took his censer and put fire in it and laid incense on it and offered unauthorized fire before the LORD, which he had not commanded them. **2.** And fire came out from before the LORD and consumed them, and they died before the LORD. **3.** Then Moses said to Aaron, "This is what the LORD has said: 'Among those who are near me I will be sanctified, and before all the people I will be glorified.'" And Aaron held his peace. **4.** And Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan, the sons of Uzziel the uncle of Aaron, and said to them, "Come near; carry your brothers away from the front of the sanctuary and out of the camp." **5.** So they came near and carried them in their coats out of the camp, as Moses had said. **6.** And Moses said to Aaron and to Eleazar and Ithamar his sons, "Do not let the hair of your heads hang loose, and do not tear your clothes, lest you die, and wrath come upon all the congregation; but let your brothers, the whole house of Israel, bewail the burning that the LORD has kindled. **7.** And do not go outside the entrance of the tent of meeting, lest you die, for the anointing oil of the LORD is upon you." And they did according to the word of Moses.

## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 12:30** [2]

30. take care that you be not ensnared to follow them, after they have been destroyed before you, and that you do not inquire about their gods, saying, 'How did these nations serve their gods? – that I also may do the same.'

#### **1 Samuel 15:22-23** [2]

22. And Samuel said, "Has the LORD as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the LORD? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to listen than the fat of rams. 23. For rebellion is as the sin of divination, and presumption is as iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the LORD, he has also rejected you from being king."

#### **Matthew 15:9** [2]

9. in vain do they worship me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men."

#### **John 4:23-24** [2]

23. But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. 24. God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

## Question 97

### May we then not make any image at all?

God cannot and may not be visibly portrayed in any way. Creatures may be portrayed, but God forbids us to make or have any images of them in order to worship them or to serve God through them. [1]

#### **Exodus 34:13-14** [1]

13. You shall tear down their altars and break their pillars and cut down their Asherim 14. (for you shall worship no other god, for the LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God),

#### **Exodus 34:17** [1]

17. "You shall not make for yourself any gods of cast metal.

#### **Numbers 33:52** [1]

52. then you shall drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you and destroy all their figured stones and destroy all their metal images and demolish all their high places.

#### **2 Kings 18:4-5** [1]

4. He removed the high places and broke the pillars and cut down the Asherah. And he broke in pieces the bronze serpent that Moses had made, for until those days the people of Israel had made offerings to it (it was called Nehushtan). 5. He trusted in the LORD, the God of Israel, so that there was none like him among all the kings of Judah after him, nor among those who were before him.

#### **Isaiah 40:25** [1]

25. To whom then will you compare me, that I should be like him? says the Holy One.

## Question 98

### But may images not be tolerated in the churches as "books for the laity"?

No, for we should not be wiser than God. He wants His people to be taught not by means of dumb images [1] but by the living preaching of His Word. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 10:8** [1]

8. They are both stupid and foolish; the instruction of idols is but wood!

#### **Habakkuk 2:18-20** [1]

18. "What profit is an idol when its maker has shaped it, a metal image, a teacher of lies? For its maker trusts in his own creation when he makes speechless idols! 19. Woe to him who says to a wooden thing, Awake; to a silent stone, Arise! Can this teach? Behold, it is overlaid with gold and silver, and there is no breath at all in it. 20. But the LORD is in his holy temple; let all the earth keep silence before him."

#### **Romans 10:14-15** [2]

14. How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? 15. And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the good news!"

#### **Romans 10:17** [2]

17. So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ.

#### **2 Timothy 3:16-17** [2]

16. All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, 17. that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.

#### **2 Peter 1:19** [2]

19. And we have the prophetic word more fully confirmed, to which you will do well to pay attention as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts,

## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Leviticus 24:10-17** [1]

10. Now an Israelite woman's son, whose father was an Egyptian, went out among the people of Israel. And the Israelite woman's son and a man of Israel fought in the camp, 11. and the Israelite woman's son blasphemed the Name, and cursed. Then they brought him to Moses. His mother's name was Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan. 12. And they put him in custody, till the will of the LORD should be clear to them. 13. Then the LORD spoke to Moses, saying, 14. "Bring out of the camp the one who cursed, and let all who heard him lay their hands on his head, and let all the congregation stone him. 15. And speak to the people of Israel, saying, Whoever curses his God shall bear his sin. 16. Whoever blasphemes the name of the LORD shall surely be put to death. All the congregation shall stone him. The sojourner as well as the native, when he blasphemes the Name, shall be put to death. 17. "Whoever takes a human life shall surely be put to death.

**Leviticus 19:1** [2] 1. And the LORD spoke to Moses, saying,

#### **Matthew 5:37** [3]

37. Let what you say be simply 'Yes' or 'No'; anything more than this comes from evil.

#### **James 5:12** [3]

12. But above all, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or by earth or by any other oath, but let your "yes" be yes and your "no" be no, so that you may not fall under condemnation.

#### **Leviticus 5:1** [4]

1. "If anyone sins in that he hears a public adjuration to testify, and though he is a witness, whether he has seen or come to know the matter, yet does not speak, he shall bear his iniquity;

#### **Proverbs 29:24** [4]

24. The partner of a thief hates his own life; he hears the curse, but discloses nothing.

## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Psalm 99:1-5** [5]

1. The LORD reigns; let the peoples tremble! He sits enthroned upon the cherubim; let the earth quake! 2. The LORD is great in Zion; he is exalted over all the peoples. 3. Let them praise your great and awesome name! Holy is he! 4. The King in his might loves justice. You have established equity; you have executed justice and righteousness in Jacob. 5. Exalt the LORD our God; worship at his footstool! Holy is he!

#### **Isaiah 45:23** [5]

23. By myself I have sworn; from my mouth has gone out in righteousness a word that shall not return: 'To me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear allegiance.'

#### **Jeremiah 4:2** [5]

2. and if you swear, 'As the LORD lives,' in truth, in justice, and in righteousness, then nations shall bless themselves in him, and in him shall they glory."

#### **Matthew 10:32-33** [6]

32. So everyone who acknowledges me before men, I also will acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven, 33. but whoever denies me before men, I also will deny before my Father who is in heaven.

#### **Romans 10:9-10** [6]

9. because, if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. 10. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.

#### **Psalm 50:14-15** [7]

14. Offer to God a sacrifice of thanksgiving, and perform your vows to the Most High, 15. and call upon me in the day of trouble; I will deliver you, and you shall glorify me."

#### **1 Timothy 2:8** [7]

8. I desire then that in every place the men should pray, lifting holy hands without anger or quarreling;

## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Romans 2:24** [8]

24. For, as it is written, "The name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles because of you."

#### **Colossians 3:17** [8]

17. And whatever you do, in word or deed, do everything in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God the Father through him.

#### **1 Timothy 6:1** [8]

1. Let all who are under a yoke as bondservants regard their own masters as worthy of all honor, so that the name of God and the teaching may not be reviled.

### Question 100

**Is the blaspheming of God's Name by swearing and cursing such a grievous sin that God is angry also with those who do not prevent and forbid it as much as they can?**

Certainly, [1]

for no sin is greater or provokes God's wrath more than the blaspheming of His Name. That is why He commanded it to be punished with death. [2]

#### **Leviticus 5:1** [1]

1. "If anyone sins in that he hears a public adjuration to testify, and though he is a witness, whether he has seen or come to know the matter, yet does not speak, he shall bear his iniquity;

#### **Leviticus 24:16** [2]

16. Whoever blasphemes the name of the LORD shall surely be put to death. All the congregation shall stone him. The sojourner as well as the native, when he blasphemes the Name, shall be put to death.



## Question 101

### But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?

Yes, when the government demands it of its subjects, or when necessity requires it, in order to maintain and promote fidelity and truth, to God's glory and for our neighbour's good. Such oath-taking is based on God's Word [1] and was therefore rightly used by saints in the Old and the New Testament. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 6:13** [1]

13. It is the LORD your God you shall fear. Him you shall serve and by his name you shall swear.

#### **Deuteronomy 10:20** [1]

20. You shall fear the LORD your God. You shall serve him and hold fast to him, and by his name you shall swear.

#### **Jeremiah 4:1-2** [1]

1. "If you return, O Israel, declares the LORD, to me you should return. If you remove your detestable things from my presence, and do not waver, 2. and if you swear, 'As the LORD lives,' in truth, in justice, and in righteousness, then nations shall bless themselves in him, and in him shall they glory."

#### **Hebrews 6:16** [1]

16. For people swear by something greater than themselves, and in all their disputes an oath is final for confirmation.

#### **Genesis 21:24** [2] 24. And Abraham said, "I will swear."

#### **Genesis 31:53** [2]

53. The God of Abraham and the God of Nahor, the God of their father, judge between us." So Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac,

#### **Joshua 9:15** [2]

15. And Joshua made peace with them and made a covenant with them, to let them live, and the leaders of the congregation swore to them.

#### **1 Samuel 24:22** [2]

22. And David swore this to Saul. Then Saul went home, but David and his men went up to the stronghold.

#### **1 Kings 1:29-30** [2]

29. And the king swore, saying, "As the LORD lives, who has redeemed my soul out of every adversity, 30. as I swore to you by the LORD, the God of Israel, saying, 'Solomon your son shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne in my place,' even so will I do this day."

### Question 101

## **But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?**

Yes, when the government demands it of its subjects, or when necessity requires it, in order to maintain and promote fidelity and truth, to God's glory and for our neighbour's good. Such oath-taking is based on God's Word [1] and was therefore rightly used by saints in the Old and the New Testament. [2]

### **Romans 1:9** [2]

9. For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I mention you

### **2 Corinthians 1:23** [2]

23. But I call God to witness against me — it was to spare you that I refrained from coming again to Corinth.

## Question 102

### May we also swear by saints or other creatures?

No. A lawful oath is a calling upon God, who alone knows the heart, to bear witness to the truth, and to punish me if I swear falsely. [1]  
No creature is worthy of such honour. [2]

#### **Romans 9:1** [1]

1. I am speaking the truth in Christ — I am not lying; my conscience bears me witness in the Holy Spirit —

#### **2 Corinthians 1:23** [1]

23. But I call God to witness against me — it was to spare you that I refrained from coming again to Corinth.

#### **Matthew 5:34-37** [2]

34. But I say to you, Do not take an oath at all, either by heaven, for it is the throne of God, 35. or by the earth, for it is his footstool, or by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great King. 36. And do not take an oath by your head, for you cannot make one hair white or black. 37. Let what you say be simply 'Yes' or 'No'; anything more than this comes from evil.

#### **Matthew 23:16-22** [2]

16. "Woe to you, blind guides, who say, 'If anyone swears by the temple, it is nothing, but if anyone swears by the gold of the temple, he is bound by his oath.' 17. You blind fools! For which is greater, the gold or the temple that has made the gold sacred? 18. And you say, 'If anyone swears by the altar, it is nothing, but if anyone swears by the gift that is on the altar, he is bound by his oath.' 19. You blind men! For which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift sacred? 20. So whoever swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it. 21. And whoever swears by the temple swears by it and by him who dwells in it. 22. And whoever swears by heaven swears by the throne of God and by him who sits upon it.

#### **James 5:12** [2]

12. But above all, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or by earth or by any other oath, but let your "yes" be yes and your "no" be no, so that you may not fall under condemnation.

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

### **Deuteronomy 6:4-9** [1]

**4.** "Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one. **5.** You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might. **6.** And these words that I command you today shall be on your heart. **7.** You shall teach them diligently to your children, and shall talk of them when you sit in your house, and when you walk by the way, and when you lie down, and when you rise. **8.** You shall bind them as a sign on your hand, and they shall be as frontlets between your eyes. **9.** You shall write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates.

### **Deuteronomy 6:20-25** [1]

**20.** "When your son asks you in time to come, 'What is the meaning of the testimonies and the statutes and the rules that the LORD our God has commanded you?' **21.** then you shall say to your son, 'We were Pharaoh's slaves in Egypt. And the LORD brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand. **22.** And the LORD showed signs and wonders, great and grievous, against Egypt and against Pharaoh and all his household, before our eyes. **23.** And he brought us out from there, that he might bring us in and give us the land that he swore to give to our fathers. **24.** And the LORD commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear the LORD our God, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as we are this day. **25.** And it will be righteousness for us, if we are careful to do all this commandment before the LORD our God, as he has commanded us.'

## Question 103

### What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

#### **1 Corinthians 9:13-14** [1]

**13.** Do you not know that those who are employed in the temple service get their food from the temple, and those who serve at the altar share in the sacrificial offerings? **14.** In the same way, the Lord commanded that those who proclaim the gospel should get their living by the gospel.

#### **2 Timothy 2:2** [1]

**2.** and what you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses entrust to faithful men, who will be able to teach others also.

#### **2 Timothy 3:13-17** [1]

**13.** while evil people and impostors will go on from bad to worse, deceiving and being deceived. **14.** But as for you, continue in what you have learned and have firmly believed, knowing from whom you learned it **15.** and how from childhood you have been acquainted with the sacred writings, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. **16.** All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, **17.** that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.

#### **Titus 1:5** [1]

**5.** This is why I left you in Crete, so that you might put what remained into order, and appoint elders in every town as I directed you —

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the  
eternal sabbath. [7]

### Deuteronomy 12:5-12 [2]

### Psalm 40:9-10 [2]

9. I have told the glad news of deliverance in the great congregation; behold, I have not restrained my lips, as you know, O LORD. 10. I have not hidden your deliverance within my heart; I have spoken of your faithfulness and your salvation; I have not concealed your steadfast love and your faithfulness from the great congregation.

### Psalm 68:26 [2]

26. "Bless God in the great congregation, the LORD, O you who are of Israel's fountain!"

## Question 103

### What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

#### **Acts 2:42-47** [2]

42. And they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and the prayers. 43. And awe came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were being done through the apostles. 44. And all who believed were together and had all things in common. 45. And they were selling their possessions and belongings and distributing the proceeds to all, as any had need. 46. And day by day, attending the temple together and breaking bread in their homes, they received their food with glad and generous hearts, 47. praising God and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to their number day by day those who were being saved.

#### **Hebrews 10:23-25** [2]

23. Let us hold fast the confession of our hope without wavering, for he who promised is faithful. 24. And let us consider how to stir up one another to love and good works, 25. not neglecting to meet together, as is the habit of some, but encouraging one another, and all the more as you see the Day drawing near.

#### **Romans 10:14-17** [3]

14. How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? 15. And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the good news!" 16. But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed what he has heard from us?" 17. So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ.

## Question 103

### What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

#### **1 Corinthians 14:26-33** [3]

**26.** What then, brothers? When you come together, each one has a hymn, a lesson, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation. Let all things be done for building up. **27.** If any speak in a tongue, let there be only two or at most three, and each in turn, and let someone interpret. **28.** But if there is no one to interpret, let each of them keep silent in church and speak to himself and to God. **29.** Let two or three prophets speak, and let the others weigh what is said. **30.** If a revelation is made to another sitting there, let the first be silent. **31.** For you can all prophesy one by one, so that all may learn and all be encouraged, **32.** and the spirits of prophets are subject to prophets. **33.** For God is not a God of confusion but of peace. As in all the churches of the saints,

#### **1 Timothy 4:13** [3]

**13.** Until I come, devote yourself to the public reading of Scripture, to exhortation, to teaching.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:23-24** [4]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me."

#### **Colossians 3:16** [5]

**16.** Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly, teaching and admonishing one another in all wisdom, singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, with thankfulness in your hearts to God.

#### **1 Timothy 2:1** [5]

**1.** First of all, then, I urge that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all people,

#### **Psalms 50:14** [6]

**14.** Offer to God a sacrifice of thanksgiving, and perform your vows to the Most High,



### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

### **1 Corinthians 16:2** [6]

2. On the first day of every week, each of you is to put something  
aside and store it up, as he may prosper, so that there will be no  
collecting when I come.

### **2 Corinthians 8** [6]

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the  
eternal sabbath. [7]

**2 Corinthians 9** [6]

**Isaiah 66:23** [7]

23. From new moon to new moon, and from Sabbath to Sabbath,  
all flesh shall come to worship before me, declares the LORD.

**Hebrews 4:9-11** [7]

9. So then, there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God, 10.  
for whoever has entered God's rest has also rested from his  
works as God did from his. 11. Let us therefore strive to enter that  
rest, so that no one may fall by the same sort of disobedience.

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Exodus 21:17** [1]

17. "Whoever curses his father or his mother shall be put to death.

#### **Proverbs 1:8** [1]

8. Hear, my son, your father's instruction, and forsake not your mother's teaching,

#### **Proverbs 4:1** [1]

1. Hear, O sons, a father's instruction, and be attentive, that you may gain insight,

#### **Romans 13:1-2** [1]

1. Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been instituted by God. 2. Therefore whoever resists the authorities resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment.

#### **Ephesians 5:21-22** [1]

21. submitting to one another out of reverence for Christ. 22. Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord.

#### **Ephesians 6:1-9** [1]

1. Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. 2. "Honor your father and mother" (this is the first commandment with a promise), 3. "that it may go well with you and that you may live long in the land." 4. Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger, but bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord. 5. Bondservants, obey your earthly masters with fear and trembling, with a sincere heart, as you would Christ, 6. not by the way of eye-service, as people-pleasers, but as bondservants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart, 7. rendering service with a good will as to the Lord and not to man, 8. knowing that whatever good anyone does, this he will receive back from the Lord, whether he is a bondservant or is free. 9. Masters, do the same to them, and stop your threatening, knowing that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and that there is no partiality with him.

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Colossians 3:18-4:1** [1]

18. Wives, submit to your husbands, as is fitting in the Lord. 19. Husbands, love your wives, and do not be harsh with them. 20. Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord. 21. Fathers, do not provoke your children, lest they become discouraged. 22. Bondservants, obey in everything those who are your earthly masters, not by way of eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with sincerity of heart, fearing the Lord. 23. Whatever you do, work heartily, as for the Lord and not for men, 24. knowing that from the Lord you will receive the inheritance as your reward. You are serving the Lord Christ. 25. For the wrongdoer will be paid back for the wrong he has done, and there is no partiality.

#### **Colossians 3:18-4:1** [1]

1. Masters, treat your bondservants justly and fairly, knowing that you also have a Master in heaven.

#### **Proverbs 20:20** [2]

20. If one curses his father or his mother, his lamp will be put out in utter darkness.

#### **Proverbs 23:22** [2]

22. Listen to your father who gave you life, and do not despise your mother when she is old.

#### **1 Peter 2:18** [2]

18. Servants, be subject to your masters with all respect, not only to the good and gentle but also to the unjust.

#### **Matthew 22:21** [3]

21. They said, "Caesar's." Then he said to them, "Therefore render to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Romans 13:1-8** [3]

1. Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been instituted by God. 2. Therefore whoever resists the authorities resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment. 3. For rulers are not a terror to good conduct, but to bad. Would you have no fear of the one who is in authority? Then do what is good, and you will receive his approval, 4. for he is God's servant for your good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword in vain. For he is the servant of God, an avenger who carries out God's wrath on the wrongdoer. 5. Therefore one must be in subjection, not only to avoid God's wrath but also for the sake of conscience. 6. For because of this you also pay taxes, for the authorities are ministers of God, attending to this very thing. 7. Pay to all what is owed to them: taxes to whom taxes are owed, revenue to whom revenue is owed, respect to whom respect is owed, honor to whom honor is owed. 8. Owe no one anything, except to love each other, for the one who loves another has fulfilled the law.

#### **Ephesians 6:1-9** [3]

1. Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. 2. "Honor your father and mother" (this is the first commandment with a promise), 3. "that it may go well with you and that you may live long in the land." 4. Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger, but bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord. 5. Bondservants, obey your earthly masters with fear and trembling, with a sincere heart, as you would Christ, 6. not by the way of eye-service, as people-pleasers, but as bondservants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart, 7. rendering service with a good will as to the Lord and not to man, 8. knowing that whatever good anyone does, this he will receive back from the Lord, whether he is a bondservant or is free. 9. Masters, do the same to them, and stop your threatening, knowing that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and that there is no partiality with him.

### Question 104

## What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

### **Colossians 3:18-21** [3]

**18.** Wives, submit to your husbands, as is fitting in the Lord. **19.**

Husbands, love your wives, and do not be harsh with them. **20.**

Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the

Lord. **21.** Fathers, do not provoke your children, lest they become discouraged.

## Question 105

### What does God require in the sixth commandment?

I am not to dishonour, hate, injure, or kill my neighbour by thoughts, words, or gestures, and much less by deeds, whether personally or through another; [1]

rather, I am to put away all desire of revenge. [2] Moreover, I am not to harm or recklessly endanger myself. [3]

Therefore, also, the government bears the sword to prevent murder. [4]

#### **Genesis 9:6** [1]

6. "Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed, for God made man in his own image.

#### **Leviticus 19:17-18** [1]

17. "You shall not hate your brother in your heart, but you shall reason frankly with your neighbor, lest you incur sin because of him. 18. You shall not take vengeance or bear a grudge against the sons of your own people, but you shall love your neighbor as yourself: I am the LORD.

#### **Matthew 5:21-22** [1]

21. "You have heard that it was said to those of old, 'You shall not murder; and whoever murders will be liable to judgment.' 22. But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother will be liable to judgment; whoever insults his brother will be liable to the council; and whoever says, 'You fool!' will be liable to the hell of fire.

#### **Matthew 26:52** [1]

52. Then Jesus said to him, "Put your sword back into its place. For all who take the sword will perish by the sword.

#### **Proverbs 25:21-22** [2]

21. If your enemy is hungry, give him bread to eat, and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink, 22. for you will heap burning coals on his head, and the LORD will reward you.

#### **Matthew 18:35** [2]

35. So also my heavenly Father will do to every one of you, if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

#### **Romans 12:19** [2]

19. Beloved, never avenge yourselves, but leave it to the wrath of God, for it is written, "Vengeance is mine, I will repay, says the Lord."

#### **Ephesians 4:26** [2]

26. Be angry and do not sin; do not let the sun go down on your anger,

## Question 105

### What does God require in the sixth commandment?

I am not to dishonour, hate, injure, or kill my neighbour by thoughts, words, or gestures, and much less by deeds, whether personally or through another; [1]

rather, I am to put away all desire of revenge. [2] Moreover, I am not to harm or recklessly endanger myself. [3]

Therefore, also, the government bears the sword to prevent murder. [4]

#### **Matthew 4:7** [3]

7. Jesus said to him, "Again it is written, 'You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.'"

#### **Matthew 26:52** [3]

52. Then Jesus said to him, "Put your sword back into its place. For all who take the sword will perish by the sword."

#### **Romans 13:11-14** [3]

11. Besides this you know the time, that the hour has come for you to wake from sleep. For salvation is nearer to us now than when we first believed. 12. The night is far gone; the day is at hand. So then let us cast off the works of darkness and put on the armor of light. 13. Let us walk properly as in the daytime, not in orgies and drunkenness, not in sexual immorality and sensuality, not in quarreling and jealousy. 14. But put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make no provision for the flesh, to gratify its desires.

#### **Genesis 9:6** [4]

6. "Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed, for God made man in his own image."

#### **Exodus 21:14** [4]

14. But if a man willfully attacks another to kill him by cunning, you shall take him from my altar, that he may die.

#### **Romans 13:4** [4]

4. for he is God's servant for your good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword in vain. For he is the servant of God, an avenger who carries out God's wrath on the wrongdoer.



## Question 106

### But does this commandment speak only of killing?

By forbidding murder God teaches us that He hates the root of murder, such as envy, hatred, anger, and desire of revenge, [1] and that He regards all these as murder. [2]

#### **Proverbs 14:30** [1]

**30.** A tranquil heart gives life to the flesh, but envy makes the bones rot.

#### **Romans 1:29** [1]

**29.** They were filled with all manner of unrighteousness, evil, covetousness, malice. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, maliciousness. They are gossips,

#### **Romans 12:19** [1]

**19.** Beloved, never avenge yourselves, but leave it to the wrath of God, for it is written, "Vengeance is mine, I will repay, says the Lord."

#### **Galatians 5:19-21** [1]

**19.** Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, **20.** idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, rivalries, dissensions, divisions, **21.** envy, drunkenness, orgies, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who do such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **James 1:20** [1]

**20.** for the anger of man does not produce the righteousness of God.

#### **1 John 2:9-11** [1]

**9.** Whoever says he is in the light and hates his brother is still in darkness. **10.** Whoever loves his brother abides in the light, and in him there is no cause for stumbling. **11.** But whoever hates his brother is in the darkness and walks in the darkness, and does not know where he is going, because the darkness has blinded his eyes.

#### **1 John 3:15** [2]

**15.** Everyone who hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding in him.

## Question 107

### Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

No. When God condemns envy, hatred, and anger, He commands us to love our neighbour as ourselves, [1]  
to show patience, peace, gentleness, mercy, and friendliness toward him, [2]  
to protect him from harm as much as we can, and to do good even to our enemies. [3]

#### **Matthew 7:12** [1]

12. "So whatever you wish that others would do to you, do also to them, for this is the Law and the Prophets.

#### **Matthew 22:39** [1]

39. And a second is like it: You shall love your neighbor as yourself.

#### **Romans 12:10** [1]

10. Love one another with brotherly affection. Outdo one another in showing honor.

#### **Matthew 5:5** [2]

5. "Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

**Luke 6:36** [2] 36. Be merciful, even as your Father is merciful.

#### **Romans 12:10** [2]

10. Love one another with brotherly affection. Outdo one another in showing honor.

#### **Romans 12:18** [2]

18. If possible, so far as it depends on you, live peaceably with all.

#### **Galatians 6:1-2** [2]

1. Brothers, if anyone is caught in any transgression, you who are spiritual should restore him in a spirit of gentleness. Keep watch on yourself, lest you too be tempted. 2. Bear one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ.

#### **Ephesians 4:2** [2]

2. with all humility and gentleness, with patience, bearing with one another in love,

#### **Colossians 3:12** [2]

12. Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience,

#### **1 Peter 3:8** [2]

8. Finally, all of you, have unity of mind, sympathy, brotherly love, a tender heart, and a humble mind.

## Question 107

### Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

No. When God condemns envy, hatred, and anger, He commands us to love our neighbour as ourselves, [1]  
to show patience, peace, gentleness, mercy, and friendliness toward him, [2]  
to protect him from harm as much as we can, and to do good even to our enemies. [3]

#### **Exodus 23:4-5** [3]

4. "If you meet your enemy's ox or his donkey going astray, you shall bring it back to him. 5. If you see the donkey of one who hates you lying down under its burden, you shall refrain from leaving him with it; you shall rescue it with him.

#### **Matthew 5:44-45** [3]

44. But I say to you, Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, 45. so that you may be sons of your Father who is in heaven. For he makes his sun rise on the evil and on the good, and sends rain on the just and on the unjust.

#### **Romans 12:20** [3]

20. To the contrary, "if your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink; for by so doing you will heap burning coals on his head."

## Question 108

### What does the seventh commandment teach us?

That all unchastity is cursed by God. [1] We must therefore detest it from the heart [2] and live chaste and disciplined lives, both within and outside of holy marriage. [3]

#### **Leviticus 18:30** [1]

**30.** So keep my charge never to practice any of these abominable customs that were practiced before you, and never to make yourselves unclean by them: I am the LORD your God."

#### **Ephesians 5:3-5** [1]

**3.** But sexual immorality and all impurity or covetousness must not even be named among you, as is proper among saints. **4.** Let there be no filthiness nor foolish talk nor crude joking, which are out of place, but instead let there be thanksgiving. **5.** For you may be sure of this, that everyone who is sexually immoral or impure, or who is covetous (that is, an idolater), has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God.

**Jude 1:22** [2] **22.** And have mercy on those who doubt;

#### **Jude 1:23** [2]

**23.** save others by snatching them out of the fire; to others show mercy with fear, hating even the garment stained by the flesh.

#### **1 Corinthians 7:1-9** [3]

**1.** Now concerning the matters about which you wrote: "It is good for a man not to have sexual relations with a woman." **2.** But because of the temptation to sexual immorality, each man should have his own wife and each woman her own husband. **3.** The husband should give to his wife her conjugal rights, and likewise the wife to her husband. **4.** For the wife does not have authority over her own body, but the husband does. Likewise the husband does not have authority over his own body, but the wife does. **5.** Do not deprive one another, except perhaps by agreement for a limited time, that you may devote yourselves to prayer; but then come together again, so that Satan may not tempt you because of your lack of self-control. **6.** Now as a concession, not a command, I say this. **7.** I wish that all were as I myself am. But each has his own gift from God, one of one kind and one of another. **8.** To the unmarried and the widows I say that it is good for them to remain single, as I am. **9.** But if they cannot exercise self-control, they should marry. For it is better to marry than to burn with passion.

## Question 108

### What does the seventh commandment teach us?

That all unchastity is cursed by God. [1] We must therefore detest it from the heart [2] and live chaste and disciplined lives, both within and outside of holy marriage. [3]

#### **1 Thessalonians 4:3-8** [3]

3. For this is the will of God, your sanctification: that you abstain from sexual immorality; 4. that each one of you know how to control his own body in holiness and honor, 5. not in the passion of lust like the Gentiles who do not know God; 6. that no one transgress and wrong his brother in this matter, because the Lord is an avenger in all these things, as we told you beforehand and solemnly warned you. 7. For God has not called us for impurity, but in holiness. 8. Therefore whoever disregards this, disregards not man but God, who gives his Holy Spirit to you.

#### **Hebrews 13:4** [3]

4. Let marriage be held in honor among all, and let the marriage bed be undefiled, for God will judge the sexually immoral and adulterous.

## Question 109

# Does God in this commandment forbid nothing more than adultery and similar shameful sins?

Since we, body and soul, are temples of the Holy Spirit, it is God's will that we keep ourselves pure and holy. Therefore He forbids all unchaste acts, gestures, words, thoughts, desires, [1] and whatever may entice us to unchastity. [2]

### **Matthew 5:27-29** [1]

**27.** "You have heard that it was said, 'You shall not commit adultery.' **28.** But I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lustful intent has already committed adultery with her in his heart. **29.** If your right eye causes you to sin, tear it out and throw it away. For it is better that you lose one of your members than that your whole body be thrown into hell.

### **1 Corinthians 6:18-20** [1]

**18.** Flee from sexual immorality. Every other sin a person commits is outside the body, but the sexually immoral person sins against his own body. **19.** Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own, **20.** for you were bought with a price. So glorify God in your body.

### **Ephesians 5:3-4** [1]

**3.** But sexual immorality and all impurity or covetousness must not even be named among you, as is proper among saints. **4.** Let there be no filthiness nor foolish talk nor crude joking, which are out of place, but instead let there be thanksgiving.

### **1 Corinthians 15:33** [2]

**33.** Do not be deceived: "Bad company ruins good morals."

### **Ephesians 5:18** [2]

**18.** And do not get drunk with wine, for that is debauchery, but be filled with the Spirit,

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Exodus 22:1** [1]

1. "If a man steals an ox or a sheep, and kills it or sells it, he shall repay five oxen for an ox, and four sheep for a sheep.

#### **1 Corinthians 5:9-10** [1]

9. I wrote to you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people – 10. not at all meaning the sexually immoral of this world, or the greedy and swindlers, or idolaters, since then you would need to go out of the world.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:9, 10** [1]

9. Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who practice homosexuality, 10. nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **Deuteronomy 25:13-16** [2]

13. "You shall not have in your bag two kinds of weights, a large and a small. 14. You shall not have in your house two kinds of measures, a large and a small. 15. A full and fair weight you shall have, a full and fair measure you shall have, that your days may be long in the land that the LORD your God is giving you. 16. For all who do such things, all who act dishonestly, are an abomination to the LORD your God.

#### **Psalms 15:5** [2]

5. who does not put out his money at interest and does not take a bribe against the innocent. He who does these things shall never be moved.

#### **Proverbs 11:1** [2]

1. A false balance is an abomination to the LORD, but a just weight is his delight.

#### **Proverbs 12:22** [2]

22. Lying lips are an abomination to the LORD, but those who act faithfully are his delight.

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Ezekiel 45:9-12** [2]

**9.** "Thus says the Lord GOD: Enough, O princes of Israel! Put away violence and oppression, and execute justice and righteousness.

Cease your evictions of my people, declares the Lord GOD. **10.**

"You shall have just balances, a just ephah, and a just bath. **11.** The ephah and the bath shall be of the same measure, the bath containing one tenth of a homer, and the ephah one tenth of a homer; the homer shall be the standard measure. **12.** The shekel shall be twenty gerahs; twenty shekels plus twenty-five shekels plus fifteen shekels shall be your mina.

#### **Luke 6:35** [2]

**35.** But love your enemies, and do good, and lend, expecting nothing in return, and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, for he is kind to the ungrateful and the evil.

#### **Micah 6:9-11** [3]

**9.** The voice of the LORD cries to the city — and it is sound wisdom to fear your name: "Hear of the rod and of him who appointed it!

**10.** Can I forget any longer the treasures of wickedness in the house of the wicked, and the scant measure that is accursed? **11.**

Shall I acquit the man with wicked scales and with a bag of deceitful weights?

#### **Luke 3:14** [3]

**14.** Soldiers also asked him, "And we, what shall we do?" And he said to them, "Do not extort money from anyone by threats or by false accusation, and be content with your wages."



## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **James 5:1-6** [3]

1. Come now, you rich, weep and howl for the miseries that are coming upon you. 2. Your riches have rotted and your garments are moth-eaten. 3. Your gold and silver have corroded, and their corrosion will be evidence against you and will eat your flesh like fire. You have laid up treasure in the last days. 4. Behold, the wages of the laborers who mowed your fields, which you kept back by fraud, are crying out against you, and the cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts. 5. You have lived on the earth in luxury and in self-indulgence. You have fattened your hearts in a day of slaughter. 6. You have condemned and murdered the righteous person. He does not resist you.

#### **Luke 12:15** [4]

15. And he said to them, "Take care, and be on your guard against all covetousness, for one's life does not consist in the abundance of his possessions."

#### **Ephesians 5:5** [4]

5. For you may be sure of this, that everyone who is sexually immoral or impure, or who is covetous (that is, an idolater), has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God.

#### **Proverbs 21:20** [5]

20. Precious treasure and oil are in a wise man's dwelling, but a foolish man devours it.

#### **Proverbs 23:20-21** [5]

20. Be not among drunkards or among gluttonous eaters of meat,  
21. for the drunkard and the glutton will come to poverty, and slumber will clothe them with rags.

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]  
but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]  
we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]  
and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Luke 16:10-13** [5]

**10.** "One who is faithful in a very little is also faithful in much, and one who is dishonest in a very little is also dishonest in much. **11.** If then you have not been faithful in the unrighteous wealth, who will entrust to you the true riches? **12.** And if you have not been faithful in that which is another's, who will give you that which is your own? **13.** No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money."

## Question 111

### What does God require of you in this commandment?

I must promote my neighbour's good wherever I can and may, deal with him as I would like others to deal with me, and work faithfully so that I may be able to give to those in need. [1]

#### **Isaiah 58:5-10** [1]

**5.** Is such the fast that I choose, a day for a person to humble himself? Is it to bow down his head like a reed, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? Will you call this a fast, and a day acceptable to the LORD? **6.** "Is not this the fast that I choose: to loose the bonds of wickedness, to undo the straps of the yoke, to let the oppressed go free, and to break every yoke? **7.** Is it not to share your bread with the hungry and bring the homeless poor into your house; when you see the naked, to cover him, and not to hide yourself from your own flesh? **8.** Then shall your light break forth like the dawn, and your healing shall spring up speedily; your righteousness shall go before you; the glory of the LORD shall be your rear guard. **9.** Then you shall call, and the LORD will answer; you shall cry, and he will say, 'Here I am.' If you take away the yoke from your midst, the pointing of the finger, and speaking wickedness, **10.** if you pour yourself out for the hungry and satisfy the desire of the afflicted, then shall your light rise in the darkness and your gloom be as the noonday.

#### **Matthew 7:12** [1]

**12.** "So whatever you wish that others would do to you, do also to them, for this is the Law and the Prophets.

#### **Galatians 6:9-10** [1]

**9.** And let us not grow weary of doing good, for in due season we will reap, if we do not give up. **10.** So then, as we have opportunity, let us do good to everyone, and especially to those who are of the household of faith.

#### **Ephesians 4:28** [1]

**28.** Let the thief no longer steal, but rather let him labor, doing honest work with his own hands, so that he may have something to share with anyone in need.

## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **Psalm 15** [1]

1. O LORD, who shall sojourn in your tent? Who shall dwell on your holy hill? 2. He who walks blamelessly and does what is right and speaks truth in his heart; 3. who does not slander with his tongue and does no evil to his neighbor, nor takes up a reproach against his friend; 4. in whose eyes a vile person is despised, but who honors those who fear the LORD; who swears to his own hurt and does not change; 5. who does not put out his money at interest and does not take a bribe against the innocent. He who does these things shall never be moved.

#### **Proverbs 19:5** [1]

5. A false witness will not go unpunished, and he who breathes out lies will not escape.

#### **Proverbs 19:9** [1]

9. A false witness will not go unpunished, and he who breathes out lies will perish.

#### **Proverbs 21:28** [1]

28. A false witness will perish, but the word of a man who hears will endure.

**Matthew 7:1** [1] 1. "Judge not, that you be not judged.

#### **Luke 6:37** [1]

37. "Judge not, and you will not be judged; condemn not, and you will not be condemned; forgive, and you will be forgiven;

## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **Romans 1:28-32** [1]

28. And since they did not see fit to acknowledge God, God gave them up to a debased mind to do what ought not to be done. 29. They were filled with all manner of unrighteousness, evil, covetousness, malice. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, maliciousness. They are gossips, 30. slanderers, haters of God, insolent, haughty, boastful, inventors of evil, disobedient to parents, 31. foolish, faithless, heartless, ruthless. 32. Though they know God's righteous decree that those who practice such things deserve to die, they not only do them but give approval to those who practice them.

#### **Leviticus 19:11-12** [2]

11. "You shall not steal; you shall not deal falsely; you shall not lie to one another. 12. You shall not swear by my name falsely, and so profane the name of your God: I am the LORD.

#### **Proverbs 12:22** [2]

22. Lying lips are an abomination to the LORD, but those who act faithfully are his delight.

#### **Proverbs 13:5** [2]

5. The righteous hates falsehood, but the wicked brings shame and disgrace.

#### **John 8:44** [2]

44. You are of your father the devil, and your will is to do your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks out of his own character, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

#### **Revelation 21:8** [2]

8. But as for the cowardly, the faithless, the detestable, as for murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their portion will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur, which is the second death."

#### **1 Corinthians 13:6** [3]

6. it does not rejoice at wrongdoing, but rejoices with the truth.

## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **Ephesians 4:25** [3]

25. Therefore, having put away falsehood, let each one of you speak the truth with his neighbor, for we are members one of another.

#### **1 Peter 3:8-9** [4]

8. Finally, all of you, have unity of mind, sympathy, brotherly love, a tender heart, and a humble mind. 9. Do not repay evil for evil or reviling for reviling, but on the contrary, bless, for to this you were called, that you may obtain a blessing.

#### **1 Peter 4:8** [4]

8. Above all, keep loving one another earnestly, since love covers a multitude of sins.

### Question 113

## What does the tenth commandment require of us?

That not even the slightest thought or desire contrary to any of God's commandments should ever arise in our heart. Rather, we should always hate all sin with all our heart, and delight in all righteousness. [1]

#### **Psalm 19:7-14** [1]

7. The law of the LORD is perfect, reviving the soul; the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple; 8. the precepts of the LORD are right, rejoicing the heart; the commandment of the LORD is pure, enlightening the eyes; 9. the fear of the LORD is clean, enduring forever; the rules of the LORD are true, and righteous altogether. 10. More to be desired are they than gold, even much fine gold; sweeter also than honey and drippings of the honeycomb. 11. Moreover, by them is your servant warned; in keeping them there is great reward. 12. Who can discern his errors? Declare me innocent from hidden faults. 13. Keep back your servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me! Then I shall be blameless, and innocent of great transgression. 14. Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be acceptable in your sight, O LORD, my rock and my redeemer.

#### **Psalm 139:23-24** [1]

23. Search me, O God, and know my heart! Try me and know my thoughts! 24. And see if there be any grievous way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting!

#### **Romans 7:7-8** [1]

7. What then shall we say? That the law is sin? By no means! Yet if it had not been for the law, I would not have known sin. For I would not have known what it is to covet if the law had not said, "You shall not covet." 8. But sin, seizing an opportunity through the commandment, produced in me all kinds of covetousness. For apart from the law, sin lies dead.

## Question 114

### But can those converted to God keep these commandments perfectly?

No. In this life even the holiest have only a small beginning of this obedience. [1]

Nevertheless, with earnest purpose they do begin to live not only according to some but to all the commandments of God. [2]

#### **Ecclesiastes 7:20** [1]

20. Surely there is not a righteous man on earth who does good and never sins.

#### **Romans 7:14-15** [1]

14. For we know that the law is spiritual, but I am of the flesh, sold under sin. 15. For I do not understand my own actions. For I do not do what I want, but I do the very thing I hate.

#### **1 Corinthians 13:9** [1]

9. For we know in part and we prophesy in part,

#### **1 John 1:8** [1]

8. If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.

#### **Psalms 1:1-2** [2]

1. Blessed is the man who walks not in the counsel of the wicked, nor stands in the way of sinners, nor sits in the seat of scoffers; 2. but his delight is in the law of the LORD, and on his law he meditates day and night.

#### **Romans 7:22-25** [2]

22. For I delight in the law of God, in my inner being, 23. but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members. 24. Wretched man that I am! Who will deliver me from this body of death? 25. Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind, but with my flesh I serve the law of sin.

#### **Philippians 3:12-16** [2]

12. Not that I have already obtained this or am already perfect, but I press on to make it my own, because Christ Jesus has made me his own. 13. Brothers, I do not consider that I have made it my own. But one thing I do: forgetting what lies behind and straining forward to what lies ahead, 14. I press on toward the goal for the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus. 15. Let those of us who are mature think this way, and if in anything you think otherwise, God will reveal that also to you. 16. Only let us hold true to what we have attained.



### Question 115

## **If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?**

First, that throughout our life we may more and more become aware of our sinful nature, and therefore seek more eagerly the forgiveness of sins and righteousness in Christ. [1]

Second, that we may be zealous for good deeds and constantly pray to God for the grace of the Holy Spirit, that He may more and more renew us after God's image, until after this life we reach the goal of perfection. [2]

#### **Psalm 32:5** [1]

5. I acknowledged my sin to you, and I did not cover my iniquity; I said, "I will confess my transgressions to the LORD," and you forgave the iniquity of my sin. *Selah*

#### **Romans 3:19-26** [1]

19. Now we know that whatever the law says it speaks to those who are under the law, so that every mouth may be stopped, and the whole world may be held accountable to God. 20. For by works of the law no human being will be justified in his sight, since through the law comes knowledge of sin. 21. But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it — 22. the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction: 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24. and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, 25. whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith. This was to show God's righteousness, because in his divine forbearance he had passed over former sins. 26. It was to show his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

## Question 115

# If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?

First, that throughout our life we may more and more become aware of our sinful nature, and therefore seek more eagerly the forgiveness of sins and righteousness in Christ. [1]

Second, that we may be zealous for good deeds and constantly pray to God for the grace of the Holy Spirit, that He may more and more renew us after God's image, until after this life we reach the goal of perfection. [2]

### **Romans 7:7** [1]

7. What then shall we say? That the law is sin? By no means! Yet if it had not been for the law, I would not have known sin. For I would not have known what it is to covet if the law had not said, "You shall not covet."

### **Romans 7:24-25** [1]

24. Wretched man that I am! Who will deliver me from this body of death? 25. Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind, but with my flesh I serve the law of sin.

### **1 John 1:9** [1]

9. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

### **1 Corinthians 9:24** [2]

24. Do you not know that in a race all the runners run, but only one receives the prize? So run that you may obtain it.

### **Philippians 3:12-14** [2]

12. Not that I have already obtained this or am already perfect, but I press on to make it my own, because Christ Jesus has made me his own. 13. Brothers, I do not consider that I have made it my own. But one thing I do: forgetting what lies behind and straining forward to what lies ahead, 14. I press on toward the goal for the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus.

### **1 John 3:1-3** [2]

1. See what kind of love the Father has given to us, that we should be called children of God; and so we are. The reason why the world does not know us is that it did not know him. 2. Beloved, we are God's children now, and what we will be has not yet appeared; but we know that when he appears we shall be like him, because we shall see him as he is. 3. And everyone who thus hopes in him purifies himself as he is pure.

## Question 116

### Why is prayer necessary for Christians?

Because prayer is the most important part of the thankfulness which God requires of us. [1]

Moreover, God will give His grace and the Holy Spirit only to those who constantly and with heartfelt longing ask Him for these gifts and thank Him for them. [2]

#### **Psalms 50:14-15** [1]

**14.** Offer to God a sacrifice of thanksgiving, and perform your vows to the Most High, **15.** and call upon me in the day of trouble; I will deliver you, and you shall glorify me.”

#### **Psalms 116:12-19** [1]

**12.** What shall I render to the LORD for all his benefits to me? **13.** I will lift up the cup of salvation and call on the name of the LORD, **14.** I will pay my vows to the LORD in the presence of all his people. **15.** Precious in the sight of the LORD is the death of his saints. **16.** O LORD, I am your servant; I am your servant, the son of your maidservant. You have loosed my bonds. **17.** I will offer to you the sacrifice of thanksgiving and call on the name of the LORD. **18.** I will pay my vows to the LORD in the presence of all his people, **19.** in the courts of the house of the LORD, in your midst, O Jerusalem. Praise the LORD!

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:16-18** [1]

**16.** Rejoice always, **17.** pray without ceasing, **18.** give thanks in all circumstances; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.

#### **Matthew 7:7-8** [2]

**7.** “Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. **8.** For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks it will be opened.

#### **Luke 11:9-13** [2]

**9.** And I tell you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. **10.** For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks it will be opened. **11.** What father among you, if his son asks for a fish, will instead of a fish give him a serpent; **12.** or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? **13.** If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!”

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### **Psalm 145:18-20** [1]

**18.** The LORD is near to all who call on him, to all who call on him in truth. **19.** He fulfills the desire of those who fear him; he also hears their cry and saves them. **20.** The LORD preserves all who love him, but all the wicked he will destroy.

#### **John 4:22-24** [1]

**22.** You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews. **23.** But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. **24.** God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

#### **Romans 8:26-27** [1]

**26.** Likewise the Spirit helps us in our weakness. For we do not know what to pray for as we ought, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groanings too deep for words. **27.** And he who searches hearts knows what is the mind of the Spirit, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints according to the will of God.

#### **James 1:5** [1]

**5.** If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask God, who gives generously to all without reproach, and it will be given him.

#### **1 John 5:14-15** [1]

**14.** And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us. **15.** And if we know that he hears us in whatever we ask, we know that we have the requests that we have asked of him.

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### **Revelation 19:10** [1]

10. Then I fell down at his feet to worship him, but he said to me, "You must not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God." For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

#### **2 Chronicles 7:14** [2]

14. if my people who are called by my name humble themselves, and pray and seek my face and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven and will forgive their sin and heal their land.

#### **2 Chronicles 20:12** [2]

12. O our God, will you not execute judgment on them? For we are powerless against this great horde that is coming against us. We do not know what to do, but our eyes are on you."

#### **Psalms 2:11** [2]

11. Serve the LORD with fear, and rejoice with trembling.

#### **Psalms 34:18** [2]

18. The LORD is near to the brokenhearted and saves the crushed in spirit.

#### **Psalms 62:8** [2]

8. Trust in him at all times, O people; pour out your heart before him; God is a refuge for us. *Selah*

#### **Isaiah 66:2** [2]

2. All these things my hand has made, and so all these things came to be, declares the LORD. But this is the one to whom I will look: he who is humble and contrite in spirit and trembles at my word.

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### Revelation 4 [2]

#### Daniel 9:17-19 [3]

17. Now therefore, O our God, listen to the prayer of your servant and to his pleas for mercy, and for your own sake, O Lord, make your face to shine upon your sanctuary, which is desolate. 18. O my God, incline your ear and hear. Open your eyes and see our desolations, and the city that is called by your name. For we do not present our pleas before you because of our righteousness, but because of your great mercy. 19. O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive. O Lord, pay attention and act. Delay not, for your own sake, O my God, because your city and your people are called by your name."

#### Matthew 7:8 [3]

8. For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks it will be opened.

#### John 14:13-14 [3]

13. Whatever you ask in my name, this I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. 14. If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it.

### Question 117

## What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

### **John 16:23** [3]

23. In that day you will ask nothing of me. Truly, truly, I say to you, whatever you ask of the Father in my name, he will give it to you.

### **Romans 10:13** [3]

13. For "everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved."

### **James 1:6** [3]

6. But let him ask in faith, with no doubting, for the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea that is driven and tossed by the wind.

## Question 118

### What has God commanded us to ask of Him?

All the things we need for body and soul, [1] as included in the prayer which Christ our Lord Himself taught us. [2]

#### **Matthew 6:33** [1]

33. But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.

#### **James 1:17** [1]

17. Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation or shadow due to change.



## Question 119

### What is the Lord's prayer?

Our Father who art in heaven, Hallowed be Thy Name. Thy kingdom come, Thy will be done, On earth as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread; And forgive us our debts, As we also have forgiven our debtors; And lead us not into temptation, But deliver us from the evil one. For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen. [1]

#### **Matthew 6:9-13** [1]

9. Pray then like this: "Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name. 10. Your kingdom come, your will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. 11. Give us this day our daily bread, 12. and forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. 13. And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

#### **Luke 11:2-4** [1]

2. And he said to them, "When you pray, say: "Father, hallowed be your name. Your kingdom come. 3. Give us each day our daily bread, 4. and forgive us our sins, for we ourselves forgive everyone who is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation."

## Question 120

### Why has Christ commanded us to address God as Our Father?

To awaken in us at the very beginning of our prayer that childlike reverence and trust toward God which should be basic to our prayer: God has become our Father through Christ and will much less deny us what we ask of Him in faith than our fathers would refuse us earthly things. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:9-11** [1]

9. Or which one of you, if his son asks him for bread, will give him a stone? 10. Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a serpent? 11. If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him!

#### **Luke 11:11-13** [1]

11. What father among you, if his son asks for a fish, will instead of a fish give him a serpent; 12. or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? 13. If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!"

## Question 121

### Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

These words teach us not to think of God's heavenly majesty in an earthly manner, [1]  
and to expect from His almighty power all things we need for body and soul. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

**23.** "Am I a God at hand, declares the LORD, and not a God far away? **24.** Can a man hide himself in secret places so that I cannot see him? declares the LORD. Do I not fill heaven and earth? declares the LORD.

#### **Acts 17:24-25** [1]

**24.** The God who made the world and everything in it, being Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples made by man, **25.** nor is he served by human hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives to all mankind life and breath and everything.

#### **Matthew 6:25-34** [2]

**25.** "Therefore I tell you, do not be anxious about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink, nor about your body, what you will put on. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing? **26.** Look at the birds of the air: they neither sow nor reap nor gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they? **27.** And which of you by being anxious can add a single hour to his span of life? **28.** And why are you anxious about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow: they neither toil nor spin, **29.** yet I tell you, even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these. **30.** But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which today is alive and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith? **31.** Therefore do not be anxious, saying, 'What shall we eat?' or 'What shall we drink?' or 'What shall we wear?' **32.** For the Gentiles seek after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them all. **33.** But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you. **34.** "Therefore do not be anxious about tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. Sufficient for the day is its own trouble.

### Question 121

## Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

These words teach us not to think of God's heavenly majesty in an earthly manner, [1]  
and to expect from His almighty power all things we need for body and soul. [2]

### **Romans 8:31-32** [2]

**31.** What then shall we say to these things? If God is for us, who can be against us? **32.** He who did not spare his own Son but gave him up for us all, how will he not also with him graciously give us all things?

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]

and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Jeremiah 9:23-24** [1]

**23.** Thus says the LORD: "Let not the wise man boast in his wisdom, let not the mighty man boast in his might, let not the rich man boast in his riches, **24.** but let him who boasts boast in this, that he understands and knows me, that I am the LORD who practices steadfast love, justice, and righteousness in the earth. For in these things I delight, declares the LORD."

#### **Jeremiah 31:33-34** [1]

**33.** For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the LORD: I will put my law within them, and I will write it on their hearts. And I will be their God, and they shall be my people. **34.** And no longer shall each one teach his neighbor and each his brother, saying, 'Know the LORD,' for they shall all know me, from the least of them to the greatest, declares the LORD. For I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more."

#### **Matthew 16:17** [1]

**17.** And Jesus answered him, "Blessed are you, Simon Bar-Jonah! For flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but my Father who is in heaven.

#### **John 17:3** [1]

**3.** And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

#### **Exodus 34:5-8** [2]

**5.** The LORD descended in the cloud and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the LORD. **6.** The LORD passed before him and proclaimed, "The LORD, the LORD, a God merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love and faithfulness, **7.** keeping steadfast love for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, but who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children and the children's children, to the third and the fourth generation." **8.** And Moses quickly bowed his head toward the earth and worshiped.

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]

and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Psalm 145** [2]

#### **Jeremiah 32:16-20** [2]

16. "After I had given the deed of purchase to Baruch the son of Neriah, I prayed to the LORD, saying: 17. 'Ah, Lord GOD! It is you who have made the heavens and the earth by your great power and by your outstretched arm! Nothing is too hard for you. 18. You show steadfast love to thousands, but you repay the guilt of fathers to their children after them, O great and mighty God, whose name is the LORD of hosts, 19. great in counsel and mighty in deed, whose eyes are open to all the ways of the children of man, rewarding each one according to his ways and according to the fruit of his deeds. 20. You have shown signs and wonders in the land of Egypt, and to this day in Israel and among all mankind, and have made a name for yourself, as at this day.

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]

and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Luke 1:46-55** [2]

**46.** And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, **47.** and my spirit rejoices in God my Savior, **48.** for he has looked on the humble estate of his servant. For behold, from now on all generations will call me blessed; **49.** for he who is mighty has done great things for me, and holy is his name. **50.** And his mercy is for those who fear him from generation to generation. **51.** He has shown strength with his arm; he has scattered the proud in the thoughts of their hearts; **52.** he has brought down the mighty from their thrones and exalted those of humble estate; **53.** he has filled the hungry with good things, and the rich he has sent away empty. **54.** He has helped his servant Israel, in remembrance of his mercy, **55.** as he spoke to our fathers, to Abraham and to his offspring forever."

#### **Luke 1:68-75** [2]

**68.** "Blessed be the Lord God of Israel, for he has visited and redeemed his people **69.** and has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David, **70.** as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from of old, **71.** that we should be saved from our enemies and from the hand of all who hate us; **72.** to show the mercy promised to our fathers and to remember his holy covenant, **73.** the oath that he swore to our father Abraham, to grant us **74.** that we, being delivered from the hand of our enemies, might serve him without fear, **75.** in holiness and righteousness before him all our days.

#### **Romans 11: 33-36** [2]

**33.** Oh, the depth of the riches and wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments and how inscrutable his ways! **34.** "For who has known the mind of the Lord, or who has been his counselor?" **35.** "Or who has given a gift to him that he might be repaid?" **36.** For from him and through him and to him are all things. To him be glory forever. Amen.

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]  
and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Psalm 115:1** [3]

1. Not to us, O LORD, not to us, but to your name give glory, for the sake of your steadfast love and your faithfulness!

#### **Matthew 5:16** [3]

16. In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father who is in heaven.



## Question 123

### What is the second petition?

Thy kingdom come. That is: So rule us by Thy Word and Spirit that more and more we submit to Thee. [1]

Preserve and increase Thy church. [2]

Destroy the works of the devil, every power that raises itself against Thee, and every conspiracy against Thy holy Word. [3]

Do all this until the fulness of Thy kingdom comes, wherein Thou shalt be all in all. [4]

#### **Psalm 119:5** [1]

5. Oh that my ways may be steadfast in keeping your statutes!

#### **Psalm 119:105** [1]

105. Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.

#### **Psalm 143:10** [1]

10. Teach me to do your will, for you are my God! Let your good Spirit lead me on level ground!

#### **Matthew 6:33** [1]

33. But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.

#### **Psalm 51:18** [2]

18. Do good to Zion in your good pleasure; build up the walls of Jerusalem;

#### **Psalm 122:6-9** [2]

6. Pray for the peace of Jerusalem! "May they be secure who love you! 7. Peace be within your walls and security within your towers!" 8. For my brothers and companions' sake I will say, "Peace be within you!" 9. For the sake of the house of the LORD our God, I will seek your good.

#### **Matthew 16:18** [2]

18. And I tell you, you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

## Question 123

### What is the second petition?

Thy kingdom come. That is: So rule us by Thy Word and Spirit that more and more we submit to Thee. [1]

Preserve and increase Thy church. [2]

Destroy the works of the devil, every power that raises itself against Thee, and every conspiracy against Thy holy Word. [3]

Do all this until the fulness of Thy kingdom comes, wherein Thou shalt be all in all. [4]

#### **Acts 2:42-47** [2]

42. And they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and the prayers. 43. And awe came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were being done through the apostles. 44. And all who believed were together and had all things in common. 45. And they were selling their possessions and belongings and distributing the proceeds to all, as any had need. 46. And day by day, attending the temple together and breaking bread in their homes, they received their food with glad and generous hearts, 47. praising God and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to their number day by day those who were being saved.

#### **Romans 16:20** [3]

20. The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

#### **1 John 3:8** [3]

8. Whoever makes a practice of sinning is of the devil, for the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the works of the devil.

#### **Romans 8:22-23** [4]

22. For we know that the whole creation has been groaning together in the pains of childbirth until now. 23. And not only the creation, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:28** [4]

28. When all things are subjected to him, then the Son himself will also be subjected to him who put all things in subjection under him, that God may be all in all.

#### **Revelation 22:17** [4]

17. The Spirit and the Bride say, "Come." And let the one who hears say, "Come." And let the one who is thirsty come; let the one who desires take the water of life without price.

#### **Revelation 22:20** [4]

20. He who testifies to these things says, "Surely I am coming soon." Amen. Come, Lord Jesus!

## Question 124

### What is the third petition?

Thy will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. That is: Grant that we and all men may deny our own will, and without any murmuring obey Thy will, for it alone is good. [1]

Grant also that everyone may carry out the duties of his office and calling [2] as willingly and faithfully as the angels in heaven. [3]

#### **Matthew 7:21** [1]

21. "Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but the one who does the will of my Father who is in heaven.

#### **Matthew 16:24-26** [1]

24. Then Jesus told his disciples, "If anyone would come after me, let him deny himself and take up his cross and follow me. 25. For whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will find it. 26. For what will it profit a man if he gains the whole world and forfeits his soul? Or what shall a man give in return for his soul?

#### **Luke 22:42** [1]

42. saying, "Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless, not my will, but yours, be done."

#### **Romans 12:1-2** [1]

1. I appeal to you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and acceptable to God, which is your spiritual worship. 2. Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that by testing you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and acceptable and perfect.

#### **Titus 2:11-12** [1]

11. For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation for all people, 12. training us to renounce ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright, and godly lives in the present age,

## Question 124

### What is the third petition?

Thy will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. That is: Grant that we and all men may deny our own will, and without any murmuring obey Thy will, for it alone is good. [1]

Grant also that everyone may carry out the duties of his office and calling [2] as willingly and faithfully as the angels in heaven. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 7:17-24** [2]

**17.** Only let each person lead the life that the Lord has assigned to him, and to which God has called him. This is my rule in all the churches. **18.** Was anyone at the time of his call already circumcised? Let him not seek to remove the marks of circumcision. Was anyone at the time of his call uncircumcised? Let him not seek circumcision. **19.** For neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision, but keeping the commandments of God. **20.** Each one should remain in the condition in which he was called. **21.** Were you a bondservant when called? Do not be concerned about it. (But if you can gain your freedom, avail yourself of the opportunity.) **22.** For he who was called in the Lord as a bondservant is a freedman of the Lord. Likewise he who was free when called is a bondservant of Christ. **23.** You were bought with a price; do not become bondservants of men. **24.** So, brothers, in whatever condition each was called, there let him remain with God.

#### **Ephesians 6:5-9** [2]

**5.** Bondservants, obey your earthly masters with fear and trembling, with a sincere heart, as you would Christ, **6.** not by the way of eye-service, as people-pleasers, but as bondservants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart, **7.** rendering service with a good will as to the Lord and not to man, **8.** knowing that whatever good anyone does, this he will receive back from the Lord, whether he is a bondservant or is free. **9.** Masters, do the same to them, and stop your threatening, knowing that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and that there is no partiality with him.

#### **Psalms 103:20-21** [3]

**20.** Bless the LORD, O you his angels, you mighty ones who do his word, obeying the voice of his word! **21.** Bless the LORD, all his hosts, his ministers, who do his will!

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Psalm 104:27-30** [1]

**27.** These all look to you, to give them their food in due season. **28.** When you give it to them, they gather it up; when you open your hand, they are filled with good things. **29.** When you hide your face, they are dismayed; when you take away their breath, they die and return to their dust. **30.** When you send forth your Spirit, they are created, and you renew the face of the ground.

#### **Psalm 145:15-16** [1]

**15.** The eyes of all look to you, and you give them their food in due season. **16.** You open your hand; you satisfy the desire of every living thing.

#### **Matthew 6:25-34** [1]

**25.** “Therefore I tell you, do not be anxious about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink, nor about your body, what you will put on. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing? **26.** Look at the birds of the air: they neither sow nor reap nor gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they? **27.** And which of you by being anxious can add a single hour to his span of life? **28.** And why are you anxious about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow: they neither toil nor spin, **29.** yet I tell you, even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these. **30.** But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which today is alive and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith? **31.** Therefore do not be anxious, saying, ‘What shall we eat?’ or ‘What shall we drink?’ or ‘What shall we wear?’ **32.** For the Gentiles seek after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them all. **33.** But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you. **34.** “Therefore do not be anxious about tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. Sufficient for the day is its own trouble.

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Acts 14:17** [2]

17. Yet he did not leave himself without witness, for he did good by giving you rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, satisfying your hearts with food and gladness.”

#### **Acts 17:25** [2]

25. nor is he served by human hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives to all mankind life and breath and everything.

#### **James 1:17** [2]

17. Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation or shadow due to change.

#### **Deuteronomy 8:3** [3]

3. And he humbled you and let you hunger and fed you with manna, which you did not know, nor did your fathers know, that he might make you know that man does not live by bread alone, but man lives by every word that comes from the mouth of the LORD.

#### **Psalms 37:16** [3]

16. Better is the little that the righteous has than the abundance of many wicked.

#### **Psalms 127:1-2** [3]

1. Unless the LORD builds the house, those who build it labor in vain. Unless the LORD watches over the city, the watchman stays awake in vain. 2. It is in vain that you rise up early and go late to rest, eating the bread of anxious toil; for he gives to his beloved sleep.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:58** [3]

58. Therefore, my beloved brothers, be steadfast, immovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, knowing that in the Lord your labor is not in vain.

#### **Psalms 55:22** [4]

22. Cast your burden on the LORD, and he will sustain you; he will never permit the righteous to be moved.

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### Psalm 62 [4]

1. For God alone my soul waits in silence; from him comes my salvation. 2. He alone is my rock and my salvation, my fortress; I shall not be greatly shaken. 3. How long will all of you attack a man to batter him, like a leaning wall, a tottering fence? 4. They only plan to thrust him down from his high position. They take pleasure in falsehood. They bless with their mouths, but inwardly they curse. *Selah* 5. For God alone, O my soul, wait in silence, for my hope is from him. 6. He only is my rock and my salvation, my fortress; I shall not be shaken. 7. On God rests my salvation and my glory; my mighty rock, my refuge is God. 8. Trust in him at all times, O people; pour out your heart before him; God is a refuge for us. *Selah* 9. Those of low estate are but a breath; those of high estate are a delusion; in the balances they go up; they are together lighter than a breath. 10. Put no trust in extortion; set no vain hopes on robbery; if riches increase, set not your heart on them. 11. Once God has spoken; twice have I heard this: that power belongs to God, 12. and that to you, O Lord, belongs steadfast love. For you will render to a man according to his work.

#### Psalm 146 [4]

1. Praise the LORD! Praise the LORD, O my soul! 2. I will praise the LORD as long as I live; I will sing praises to my God while I have my being. 3. Put not your trust in princes, in a son of man, in whom there is no salvation. 4. When his breath departs, he returns to the earth; on that very day his plans perish. 5. Blessed is he whose help is the God of Jacob, whose hope is in the LORD his God, 6. who made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that is in them, who keeps faith forever; 7. who executes justice for the oppressed, who gives food to the hungry. The LORD sets the prisoners free; 8. the LORD opens the eyes of the blind. The LORD lifts up those who are bowed down; the LORD loves the righteous. 9. The LORD watches over the sojourners; he upholds the widow and the fatherless, but the way of the wicked he brings to ruin. 10. The LORD will reign forever, your God, O Zion, to all generations. Praise the LORD!

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Jeremiah 17:5-8** [4]

5. Thus says the LORD: "Cursed is the man who trusts in man and makes flesh his strength, whose heart turns away from the LORD.  
6. He is like a shrub in the desert, and shall not see any good come. He shall dwell in the parched places of the wilderness, in an uninhabited salt land. 7. "Blessed is the man who trusts in the LORD, whose trust is the LORD. 8. He is like a tree planted by water, that sends out its roots by the stream, and does not fear when heat comes, for its leaves remain green, and is not anxious in the year of drought, for it does not cease to bear fruit."

#### **Hebrews 13:5-6** [4]

5. Keep your life free from love of money, and be content with what you have, for he has said, "I will never leave you nor forsake you." 6. So we can confidently say, "The Lord is my helper; I will not fear; what can man do to me?"



## Question 126

### What is the fifth petition?

And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. That is: For the sake of Christ's blood, do not impute to us, wretched sinners; any of our transgressions, nor the evil which still clings to us, [1]  
as we also find this evidence of Thy grace in us that we are fully determined wholeheartedly to forgive our neighbor. [2]

#### **Psalm 51:1-7** [1]

1. Have mercy on me, O God, according to your steadfast love; according to your abundant mercy blot out my transgressions. 2. Wash me thoroughly from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin! 3. For I know my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. 4. Against you, you only, have I sinned and done what is evil in your sight, so that you may be justified in your words and blameless in your judgment. 5. Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me. 6. Behold, you delight in truth in the inward being, and you teach me wisdom in the secret heart. 7. Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow.

#### **Psalm 143:2** [1]

2. Enter not into judgment with your servant, for no one living is righteous before you.

#### **Romans 8:1** [1]

1. There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus.

#### **1 John 2:1-2** [1]

1. My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. 2. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **Matthew 6:14-15** [2]

14. For if you forgive others their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you, 15. but if you do not forgive others their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

## Question 126

### What is the fifth petition?

And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. That is: For the sake of Christ's blood, do not impute to us, wretched sinners; any of our transgressions, nor the evil which still clings to us, [1]  
as we also find this evidence of Thy grace in us that we are fully determined wholeheartedly to forgive our neighbor. [2]

**Matthew 18:21-35** [2]

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **Psalm 103:14-16** [1]

14. For he knows our frame; he remembers that we are dust. 15. As for man, his days are like grass; he flourishes like a flower of the field; 16. for the wind passes over it, and it is gone, and its place knows it no more.

#### **John 15:1-5** [1]

1. "I am the true vine, and my Father is the vinedresser. 2. Every branch in me that does not bear fruit he takes away, and every branch that does bear fruit he prunes, that it may bear more fruit. 3. Already you are clean because of the word that I have spoken to you. 4. Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit by itself, unless it abides in the vine, neither can you, unless you abide in me. 5. I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing.

#### **2 Corinthians 11:14** [2]

14. And no wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.

#### **Ephesians 6:10-13** [2]

10. Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might. 11. Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil. 12. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places. 13. Therefore take up the whole armor of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand firm.

#### **1 Peter 5:8** [2]

8. Be sober-minded; be watchful. Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour.

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **John 15:18-21** [3]

18. "If the world hates you, know that it has hated me before it hated you. 19. If you were of the world, the world would love you as its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you. 20. Remember the word that I said to you: 'A servant is not greater than his master.' If they persecuted me, they will also persecute you. If they kept my word, they will also keep yours. 21. But all these things they will do to you on account of my name, because they do not know him who sent me.

#### **Romans 7:23** [4]

23. but I see in my members another law waging war against the law of my mind and making me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members.

#### **Galatians 5:17** [4]

17. For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh, for these are opposed to each other, to keep you from doing the things you want to do.

#### **Matthew 10:19-20** [5]

19. When they deliver you over, do not be anxious how you are to speak or what you are to say, for what you are to say will be given to you in that hour. 20. For it is not you who speak, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you.

#### **Matthew 26:41** [5]

41. Watch and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."

#### **Mark 13:33** [5]

33. Be on guard, keep awake. For you do not know when the time will come.

#### **Romans 5:3-5** [5]

3. Not only that, but we rejoice in our sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance, 4. and endurance produces character, and character produces hope, 5. and hope does not put us to shame, because God's love has been poured into our hearts through the Holy Spirit who has been given to us.

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **1 Corinthians 10:13** [6]

13. No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to man.

God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond your ability, but with the temptation he will also provide the way of escape, that you may be able to endure it.

#### **1 Thessalonians 3:13** [6]

13. so that he may establish your hearts blameless in holiness before our God and Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus with all his saints.

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:23** [6]

23. Now may the God of peace himself sanctify you completely, and may your whole spirit and soul and body be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

## Question 128

### How do you conclude your prayer?

For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. That is: All this we ask of Thee because, as our King, having power over all things, Thou art both willing and able to give us all that is good, [1]  
and because not we but Thy holy Name should so receive all glory for ever. [2]

#### **Romans 10:11-13** [1]

11. For the Scripture says, "Everyone who believes in him will not be put to shame." 12. For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek; for the same Lord is Lord of all, bestowing his riches on all who call on him. 13. For "everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved."

#### **2 Peter 2:9** [1]

9. then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trials, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment until the day of judgment,

#### **Psalms 115:1** [2]

1. Not to us, O LORD, not to us, but to your name give glory, for the sake of your steadfast love and your faithfulness!

#### **Jeremiah 33:8-9** [2]

8. I will cleanse them from all the guilt of their sin against me, and I will forgive all the guilt of their sin and rebellion against me. 9. And this city shall be to me a name of joy, a praise and a glory before all the nations of the earth who shall hear of all the good that I do for them. They shall fear and tremble because of all the good and all the prosperity I provide for it.

#### **John 14:13** [2]

13. Whatever you ask in my name, this I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

### Question 129

## What does the word Amen mean?

Amen means: It is true and certain. For God has much more certainly heard my prayer than I feel in my heart that I desire this of Him. [1]

### **Isaiah 65:24** [1]

24. Before they call I will answer; while they are yet speaking I will hear.

### **2 Corinthians 1:20** [1]

20. For all the promises of God find their Yes in him. That is why it is through him that we utter our Amen to God for his glory.

### **2 Timothy 2:13** [1]

13. if we are faithless, he remains faithful — for he cannot deny himself.